



环球卓越

www.gexue.com



卓越考博英语

应试教材

2014

4周攻克 考博英语写译 周计划

博士研究生入学考试命题研究组 编著

2周攻克翻译 + 2周攻克写作

4周合理规划高效攻克写译难关



Cracking
English Entrance Exam for

Doctors

Writing & Translation



机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

卓越考博英语应试教材

4 周攻克考博英语写译周计划

博士研究生入学考试命题研究组 编著



机械工业出版社

图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

4 周攻克考博英语写译周计划 / 博士研究生入学考试
命题研究组编著. —北京: 机械工业出版社, 2013. 9
(卓越考博英语应试教材)

ISBN 978 - 7 - 111 - 44102 - 1

I. ①4… II. ①博… III. ①英语 - 写作 - 研究生 - 入学
考试 - 自学参考资料 ②英语 - 翻译 - 研究生 - 入学考试 - 自学
参考资料 IV. ①H315

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2013) 第 222133 号

机械工业出版社 (北京市百万庄大街 22 号 邮政编码 100037)
策划编辑: 杨 娟 责任编辑: 罗政军
责任印制:

印刷厂印刷 (装订)

2014 年 1 月第 1 版 · 第 1 次印刷

184mm × 260mm · 13 印张 · 334 千字

标准书号: ISBN 978 - 7 - 111 - 44102 - 1

定价: 30.00 元

凡购本书, 如有缺页、倒页、脱页, 由本社发行部调换

电话服务

网络服务

社服务中心: (010) 88361066

教材网: <http://www.cmpedu.com>

销 售 一 部: (010) 68326294

机工官网: <http://www.cmpbook.com>

销 售 二 部: (010) 88379649

机工官博: <http://weibo.com/cmp1952>

读者购书热线: (010) 88379203

封面无防伪标均为盗版

丛书序

这是一套由专业英语培训机构环球卓越策划并联手资深考博英语辅导专家为众多考博考生量身定做的应试辅导用书。在潜心研究全国名校考博英语真题的基础上，结合广大考博人员对英语的实际掌握程度和成人学习英语的特点，我们组织考博辅导界多位名师联手编写了这套“卓越考博英语应试教材”。本丛书包括《4周攻克考博英语词汇周计划》《4周攻克考博英语阅读周计划》《4周攻克考博英语写译周计划》和《考博英语名校真题及全真预测周计划》4个分册。从基础到综合再到实战演练，让考博人员在有限的时间里快速准确地把握住每一个进度，可谓是一套众考生必备的应试辅导书。

一、讲师执笔，实用性强

参与本丛书策划与编写的老师均为京城及上海、广州等地著名的考博英语辅导专家，丛书内容是他们多年辅导经验的提炼和结晶，实用性非常强，是众多考博英语辅导机构重推的辅导用书。

二、紧扣真题，直击考试

本丛书紧扣全国名校最近几年的考博英语真题，各部分考点分析透彻，重点突出，难度循序渐进，详略得当，让考生准确把握考试的重点、难点及命题趋势。

三、体系明晰，精讲精练

在编写本丛书的过程中，编者充分考虑到考生的英语水平参差不齐这一现状，在全面总结的基础上编写了《考博英语名校真题及全真预测周计划》，同时又分项精编了《4周攻克考博英语词汇周计划》《4周攻克考博英语阅读周计划》和《4周攻克考博英语写译周计划》。全套书体系明确，精讲精练，让广大考生结合自身英语知识水平，合理选择辅导用书并高效使用，在有限的时间内能够全面复习，重点把握，强化训练，轻松应对考试。

本丛书脉络清晰，内容饱满，针对性强，通俗易懂。相信广大考生在使用本丛书认真复习时，会有如临辅导班现场的切身感受；同时也真诚希望本丛书能大大提高众考生的应试能力和实际水平，助您在考场上轻松驰骋，快乐过关！

参与本书编写工作的有：初萌、梁莉娟、张秀峰、庞靖宇、谭松柏、尹航、任雁、颜炜、吴碧宇、史湘琳、李兰荣、李妙华、于春艳、李立杰、徐国萍、闫文军、郭丹、罗星、战春燕、吴珺、赵鹏、王璐、杜喜义、王钊、刘宜、孙强、王菲、代男、李晨、孙舒、马冬、安桂芹、刘丽丹、丁宇。

因编者水平有限，错误之处在所难免，欢迎广大读者批评指正。

编者

目 录

丛书序

第一周

英译汉翻译技巧

- 星期一 英译汉考情分析及翻译准备工作 / 2
- 星期二 英译汉的技巧 (一)
词义的选择、词性的转换、增译法、省译法 / 9
- 星期三 英译汉的技巧 (二)
重复法、反面着笔法、分句、合句法 / 19
- 星期四 英译汉的技巧 (三)
名词性从句、定语从句译法 / 30
- 星期五 英译汉的技巧 (四)
状语从句的译法 / 37
- 星期六 英译汉的技巧 (五)
被动语态、长句的译法 / 44
- 星期日 本周测试 / 53

第二周

汉译英翻译技巧

- 星期一 汉译英基本考情分析及翻译准备工作 / 58
- 星期二 汉译英解题技巧 (一)
词的选择、词的增补 / 64
- 星期三 汉译英解题技巧 (二)
词的省译、词类的转换、语态的转换 / 72
- 星期四 汉译英解题技巧 (三)
语序的变换、正说与反说 / 80
- 星期五 汉译英解题技巧 (四)
省略句、否定句、倒装句的译法 / 89
- 星期六 汉译英解题技巧 (五)
无主句、长句、习语的译法 / 98
- 星期日 本周测试 / 107



第三周

写作（上）——基础篇

- 星期一 提纲作文写作方法（一）
对立观点型 / 112
- 星期二 提纲作文写作方法（二）
阐述主题型、解决问题型 / 119
- 星期三 图表作文写作方法 / 124
- 星期四 情景作文写作方法 / 130
- 星期五 应用文写作方法（一） / 136
- 星期六 应用文写作方法（二） / 141
- 星期日 本周测试 / 146



第四周

写作（下）——提高篇

- 星期一 写作的基本原则 / 150
- 星期二 写作高分技巧之“遣词” / 155
- 星期三 写作亮点词汇 / 160
- 星期四 写作高分技巧之“造句” / 170
- 星期五 写作闪光句式 / 176
- 星期六 写作高分技巧之“组段” / 184
- 星期日 本周测试 / 191

附 录 应用文常用句型 / 194

第一周

英译汉翻译技巧

星期一 英译汉考情分析及翻译准备工作

星期二 英译汉的技巧（一）

词义的选择、词性的转换、增译法、省译法

星期三 英译汉的技巧（二）

重复法、反面着笔法、分句、合句法

星期四 英译汉的技巧（三）

名词性从句、定语从句译法

星期五 英译汉的技巧（四）

状语从句的译法

星期六 英译汉的技巧（五）

被动语态、长句的译法

星期日 本周测试

星期一

英译汉考情分析及翻译准备工作

一、英译汉考情分析

通过对全国重点院校历年博士研究生入学考试英语试题的分析可知,大多数院校英译汉的分值为15分左右。有的学校采用英译汉的形式,有的学校采用汉译英的形式,有的学校同时采用这两种形式来考查考生的翻译能力。教育部1992年颁布的《非英语专业研究生英语教学大纲》规定,博士生英译汉教学要求是“能借助字典,将难度较大、结构复杂的文章译成汉语,理解正确,译文达意,速度为每小时大约350个单词”。

英译汉短文内容涉及当前人们普遍关注的社会生活、政治、经济、历史、文化、科普等方面的一般常识,体裁多为议论文,科学常识性类文章占了相当大的比重。

英译汉题要求考生在理解全句、全段或全文的基础上,把语法、词汇的意思和上、下文结合起来理解。表面看上去画线的句子语法不是很复杂,词汇似乎也不陌生,但翻译时很多考生觉得难以下笔。通过分析全国重点院校历年博士研究生入学考试英语考试的英译汉题可以发现,英译汉题的难度有增大的趋势,主要体现在:不能采用就词论词、就句子论句子的简单直译方法,需要把词和句子放在篇章里去理解,还强调对英语习惯用法、语感和翻译技巧的掌握。这样仅靠熟悉语法规则和孤立地背单词已远远不够了。

二、英语和汉语的差异

要做好英汉两种语言的互译,了解语言之间的差异是首先要解决的问题。英语和汉语是两种完全不同的语言。主要体现在以下几点:

1 英语多长句,汉语多短句

英语注重结构和语法,只要结构和语法没有错误,很多意思都往往放在一个长句中来表达。而汉语注重的是语义,往往通过不同的短句来表达不同的意思,所以短句居多。例如:

Energy contributes positively to well-being by providing such consumer services as heating and lighting as well as serving as a necessary input to economic production. (清华大学2007年真题)

参考译文:从积极的方面来看,能源促进了人类幸福,不但服务了经济生产,而且为人类提供了消费服务,如供热和照明等。

2 英语多从句，汉语多分句

英语多长句，长句又通过从句引导词与主句或其他从句连接，形成一个错综复杂的整体。而汉语往往喜欢用短句行成分句来表达意思。例如：

It is becoming increasingly evident that we cannot ultimately survive with our current science and technology; yet we can't imagine living without it. (中国科学院 2007 年真题)

参考译文：最终我们不可能靠现有的科学技术生存下去，这一点越来越明显；但是我们不能想象没有它的生活是什么样子的。

3 英语多代词，汉语多名词

英语有很多代词，例如：人称代词、物主代词、关系代词、疑问代词、不定代词等。为避免表达上的重复，英语句子对再次出现的名词往往使用代词替代。而汉语中虽然也有代词，但由于句子较短，逻辑不是很强烈，频繁使用代词会造成歧义，所以汉语中多用名词，以便清楚地表达语义。例如：

Inadequacy of energy resources of the technologies for harvesting, converting, and distributing those resources has meant insufficient energy benefits to human beings and hence inconvenience, and constraints on its growth. (清华大学 2007 年真题)

参考译文：能源资源不足，或者为开采、加工和分配这些资源所需技术的不足，会影响能源为人类带来的利益，同时意味着能源的增长遭到干扰和限制。

This result merely confirms earlier American and British studies: if there is any effect of noise upon mental health, it must be so small that present methods of psychiatric diagnosis cannot find it. That does not prove that it does not exist. (南京大学 2008 年真题)

参考译文：这个结果只不过证实了美国和英国早些时候的研究结论：如果噪声对精神健康有影响的话，那也一定微乎其微，以致现代的精神病诊断方法还发现不了。但这并不能证明噪声对精神健康的影响不存在。

4 英语多被动，汉语多主动

英语比较喜欢用被动语态，特别是在不知道行为是由谁做出的时尤为明显。汉语虽然也有“被”、“由”、“让”之类的词来表示被动的动作，但这种表达远没有英语的被动语态那么常见。因此，英语中的被动在汉译中往往成了主动。例如：

All man are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with inherent and unalienable rights, ... (北京理工大学 2007 年真题)

参考译文：人人生而平等，造物者赋予他们若干不可剥夺的权利，……

5 英语爱变化，汉语爱重复

英语在表达同一意思时，往往变换表达方式。特别是在表达同一动作或同一人或物时，会用同义词或代词来变换表达。而汉语在表达方式上更注重形式的一致，所以常常重复使用某一词或句型，甚至使用排比句来增加文采。例如：

It's raining again. As I lie awake in bed, listening to the sound of those razor-sharp drops pounding on the pavement, ... (对外经济贸易大学 2007 年真题)

参考译文：天又开始下雨了。我躺在床上，听着犀利的雨点重重敲打在地面上的声音，……（在开始表达了 raining 之后，用 drops 代替 rain，变换表达。）

6 英语多省略，汉语多补充

英语由于句子结构相对严谨，往往经常使用省略。英语省略的类型很多，有名词的省略、动词的省略、有句法方面的省略、也有情景方面的省略。在并列结构中，英语往往省略前面已出现过的词语，而汉语为了表达清楚，则往往重复这些省略了的词。例如：

Oil and gas will have to come increasingly, for most countries, from deeper in the earth and from imports whose reliability and affordability cannot be guaranteed. (清华大学2008年真题)

对于大多数国家来说，尤其资源越来越多地依赖于深层埋藏、越来越多地依赖进口，且不说进口油气资源的可靠性无法得到保障，其对于进口国的购买力也是一个考验。

三、英译汉翻译标准与基本解题步骤

(一) 英译汉翻译标准

翻译创作的标准是“信、达、雅”。其中第一条就是“信”，即忠实于原文，与原文的意思相符合；“达”，就是能表达出原文的意思，让读者能理解；“雅”，是翻译的最高境界，就是使句子在符合原文的基础上“漂亮而生动”。“雅”是建立在“信”和“达”的基础之上的“雅”，离开了前两个标准，单独追求“雅”，是舍本逐末，是得不偿失的。英译汉是创造性地运用汉语将英语所表达的思想内容准确而完整地重新表达出来的语言活动。它要求考生不仅要具备一定的英语基本功，还要求考生有较好的汉语表达能力。从卷面看，考生英译汉得分不高的一个主要原因就是对翻译技巧知之甚少，不敢放手调整词序、句序、语序，不敢加字、减字，不敢进行词类转换。在翻译过程中，要把英语原文的内容用汉语准确而完整地重新表达出来，而不是将两种语言结构进行简单的转换。因此，在做英译汉的题目时，汉语所表达的意思应与原文保持一致，而汉语的句子结构只是为这一表达服务，所以不应拘泥于原文。

(二) 翻译的基本解题步骤

英汉翻译的过程主要包括三个阶段：理解、表达和校审。

1. 理解阶段

理解原文是正确表达的基础和关键。理解有误，无论怎样的“妙笔”也无法“生花”。这样的表达要么貌合神离，要么离题万里。翻译中的理解应包含语篇、语法和词汇三个方面，考查目标包括：第一，对语句上下文逻辑关系的理解；第二，对语句整体结构的理解；第三对词语之间语法关系的理解；第四，对个别词语上下文引申义的理解；第五，对个别词语本义的理解。为了透彻理解和把握英语原文，为表达阶段奠定基础，考生在应试训练和实考中应采取以下三个答题步骤：

(1) 通读原文。从整体上把握文章的主旨思想、论证思路和文体风格，理清所选语句与其他部分之间的逻辑关系，明确该句在作者的论证框架中所扮演的角色，切忌断章取义、提笔就译。

(2) 进行句法分析。快速定位句子的主干部分，找出主、谓、宾结构及其相应的修饰成分。对于复合句，要分析主从关系并核实各个从句内部词语之间的语法结构关系。注意句子有无倒装、省略，是主动语态还是被动语态，是虚拟语气还是正常语气。

(3) 准确理解或引申画线句中关键词或词组的内涵。

1) 如果句中含有 it, them, his, that, these, those 等代词，一定要顺藤摸瓜，确定其具

体指代的内容。

2) 遇上多义词,一定要结合语法搭配关系,选取与文章主旨或段意相符的、在句中特定的意思。

3) 遇上生僻词,要灵活运用多种猜词法,并结合语境合理推断或引申。

2. 表达阶段

准确、自然的表达源自对文章完整、正确的理解,但同时也取决于考生自身的汉语修养。“只可意会,不可言传”的尴尬在考生身上屡见不鲜。其原因除了考生疏于翻译练习外,更多的是因为缺少对具体翻译技巧的掌握。其实,最基本的翻译法只有两种:直译和意译。

(1) 直译,即使译文从形式到内容,包括原文的比喻、形象、民族、地方色彩等都忠实于原文。

英汉语之间的许多共性可以让考生们采用直译的方法处理译文。所以,考生应首先试着按原文的结构和顺序直译,若译文不够通顺,再进行局部调整和修改,使其自然顺畅并保持原意不变。但直译绝不是完全按照原文句法的“词对词”的套译、硬译,只有在英文思维方式、表达方法和语言结构都与汉语相同或相仿时,才适于使用直译的方法,否则应考虑采用意译的方法。

下面是两个直译法的例子:

But I hated Sakamoto, and I had a feeling he'd surely lead us both to *our ancestors*.

但是我恨坂本,并预感到他肯定会领着咱们去见祖先。

这里... he'd surely lead us both to our ancestors 直译成“他肯定会领着咱们去见祖先”,既表达了原文的内容,又保存了原文的比喻,译文也通顺。如意译为“……他肯定会领着咱们去送死”,虽反映了原文的内容,译文也算通畅,但失去了原文的形式,较为逊色。

2) Hitler was *armed to the teeth* when he launched the Second World War, but in a few years, he was completely defeated.

希特勒在发动第二次世界大战时是武装到牙齿的,可是几年后,就被彻底击败了。

这里习语 *armed to the teeth*, 形象生动,如意译为“全副武装”,语气反而较弱。

(2) 意译,即不拘泥于原文形式,重点放在表达原文内容的译法。

这时,考生要从原文的意思出发,抛开原文的语言结构,寻求符合汉语表达习惯的语言形式。尤其是对于环环相套的英语句式,如不打破原文结构,与原文亦步亦趋,必然“作茧自缚”,译文将“惨不忍读”。但意译绝不是胡译、乱译,意译的灵魂在于:“译无定则,以意为准。”无论形式如何改变,语言的意义风格不能改变。

1) Don't cross the bridge till you get to it.

不必担心太早。(不必自寻烦恼。)

如按照字面直译为“到了桥边才过桥”,未免费解,故采用意译法处理。

2) Do you see any green in my eye?

你以为我是好欺骗的吗?

这句如果按照原文逐词直译为“你从我的眼睛里看到绿颜色了吗?”,则是不知所云,所以只能意译。

考生在复习和实考时,不论采取直译、意译,还是直译加意译,一定要在忠实、通顺的前提下,对译文进行加工润色,使之在逻辑顺序、语气轻重上都比较符合汉语语言规范和习惯。只要不曲解原文思想,该省译就省译,该加译就加译,该拆译就拆译,使译文完整连贯、自然顺畅,从而减少扣分。而缩手缩脚或洋腔洋调、置汉语习惯于不顾者,其译

文必然晦涩难懂。

3. 校审阶段

1) 校审是对理解和表达的进一步深化, 是对原文进一步核实、对译文深入推敲的过程。校审阶段主要完成以下几项任务:

- 2) 进一步分析落实翻译难点, 以忠实为主, 以自然通顺为辅, 尽量不带翻译腔。
- 3) 检查在人名、地名、方位、日期、年代、数目等方面有无错译和漏译。
- 4) 对一词多义、生僻词等关键词、词组反复推敲, 修改译文中不妥或模糊之处。
- 5) 留心原文时态、语气变化的意义。
- 6) 留心名词单复数的差异, 如: work (工作), works (工厂; 作品)。
- 7) 检查有无错别字和标点符号错误。

每日训练

1 The method of scientific investigation is nothing but the expression of the necessary — mode of working of the human mind: it is simply the mode by which all phenomena are reasoned about and given precise and exact explanations. The difference between the operations and methods of a baker weighing out his goods in common scales, and the operations of a chemist by means of his balance is not that the scales in the one case, and the balance in the other, differ in the principles of their construction or manner of working; but that the latter is a much finer apparatus and of course much more accurate in its measurement than the former.

Probably there is not one here who has not in the course of the day had occasion to set in motion of a complex train of reasoning, of the very same kind, though differing in degree, as that which a scientific man goes through in tracing the causes of natural phenomena.

2 Today the ancient, ancestral wisdom of the hand has been largely replaced by the — simple movements of the machine operator. Our glass and china, furniture, books, and textiles are almost entirely products of the machine. That machine-made goods can be well designed and good-looking no one now denies; nevertheless, there are many who believe that if the old skills of the hand-worker were to die out altogether it would be a disaster. Their arguments are, roughly, three. First, that the machine is by its nature a mass producer, and that objects made in ones and twos can be made better, even cheaper, by an individual craftsman than by a machine; secondly that the human hand with relatively simple tools can produce objects of a quality permanently beyond the reach of the machine; thirdly, that it is not good for mankind if people lose the ability to create with their hands.

3 It should have been easy. They were battle-tested veterans with long ties to Reagan — and even longer ties to the Republican party, men who understood presidential politics as well as any in the country. The backdrop of the campaign was hospitable, with lots of good news to work with: America was at peace, and the nation's economy, a key factor in any election, was rebounding vigorously after recession. Furthermore, the

campaign itself was lavishly financed, with plenty of money for a top-flight staff, travel, and television commercials. And, most important, their candidate was Ronald Reagan, a president of tremendous personal popularity and dazzling communication skills. Reagan has succeeded more than any president since John F. Kennedy in projecting a broad vision of America — a nation of renewed military strength, individual initiative, and smaller federal government.

4 If people mean anything at all by the expression “untimely death”, they must believe — that some deaths run on a better schedule than others. Death in old age is rarely called untimely — a long life is thought to be a full one. But with the passing away of a young person, one assumes that the best years lay ahead and the measure of that life was still to be taken. History denies this, of course. Among prominent summer deaths, one recalls those of Marilyn Monroe (玛丽莲·梦露) and James Deans (詹姆士·迪恩斯), whose lives seemed equally brief and complete. Writers cannot bear the fact that poet John Keats (约翰·济慈) died at 26, and only half playfully judge their own lives as failures when they pass that year. The idea that the life cut short is unfulfilled is illogical because lives are measured by the impressions they leave on the world and by their intensity and virtue.

5 There are several things worth noting about cognitive neuroscience that are also — reflected in the articles in this special issue of *Science*. First, the idea that distributed brain networks underlie complex behaviors. In the early days of the field, most neuroscientists focused on individual brain regions and their responses. The sensory domain was particularly captivating; one could, for example, appropriately talk about hyper-complex cells in the visual system that responded to corners or the existence of heart columns as the organizing basis for neuro-sensory input. It is becoming clear, however, that the processing of information that leads to complex behaviors such as learning and memory involves multiple brain regions that must operate in an interactive parallel.

参考译文

1 科学研究的方法其实就是人类思维运作的必要模式的表现：这种模式就是通过它来推理、论证所有的现象并给出精确的解释。用普通的天平称货物的面包师与用精密天平的化学家在操作与方法上的不同之处并不是面包师的天平与化学家的天平在构造上和工作原理上的不同，而只是后者是比前者精密得多的仪器，当然也能得出比前者更准确的结果。

可能我们这儿没有一个人在一天的过程中没有机会作一项复杂的推理，尽管这种过程与科学家们探索自然现象的原因所经历的过程有着程度上的差异，但最终还是一样的。

2 今天，机器操作工的简单动作已基本上取代了祖先传下来的古老的手工技能。我们（使用）的玻璃器皿、陶器、家具、书本和纺织品几乎全是机器产品。现今，无人否认机器制品可以有良好的设计及美丽的外观；然而，有许多人相信如果古老的手工艺全部消失的话，那将是一场灾难。持这种看法的人大体上有三个理由（持这种看法者理由大致有三）：第一，机器就其本质而言是用于大规模生产的制造器，而由一个独立的工匠来完成那些只需做一两件的物品，可能要比用机器制造更好，甚至更便宜；第二，手工艺者用相

关的简单工具所制造出物品的质量是机器生产永远达不到的；第三，如果人们失去了用自己的双手去创造的能力，那对人类而言是损失。

3 这应该不是件难事。这都是些跟着里根多年、久经沙场的老将，他们跟共和党则有更——深厚的渊源，是这个国家里最熟悉总统政治的人。竞选的背景也很有利，也有很多好消息可供炒作。例如，美国上下一片和平，美国经济这一竞选要素也在经过一段时间的衰退之后开始强劲反弹。此外，这次竞选本身得到了慷慨资助，因此有充裕的资金用于组织一流的竞选班子、支付巡回演讲和电视广告的费用。而最重要的一点是，他们的候选人是罗纳德·里根，他可是位极具个人魅力和沟通技巧的总统。自约翰F. 肯尼迪总统以来，里根是最成功地勾勒出美国蓝图的总统：一个军事力量复兴、富有个人进取心和联邦政府得以精简的国家。

4 如果人们使用“死不逢时”的时候有所指的话，那肯定认为一些人的逝世是寿终正——寝，而另外一些人的辞世则是英年早逝。很少有人会说因年老而死亡是“死不逢时”——人们总是把老年人的寿终正寝看做是一种圆满。但是对于一个英年早逝的人，人们常常认为他的好日子还在后头，对他短暂的一生作出评价还为时尚早。然而，历史对此观点持否定态度。谈到英年早逝的人物，人们常常回想起玛丽莲·梦露和詹姆士·迪恩斯。二人生命虽短，却功成名就。作家们难以接受英国诗人约翰·济慈26岁便匆匆辞世的残酷现实，然而，当他们26岁时，只有自嘲虚度年华碌碌无为的份了。那种认为生命短暂就不圆满的观点是不合逻辑的，因为评价一个人的一生应当看他给世人留下的印象、他所取得的成就，以及他的个人品质。

5 关于认知神经科学，有几个方面值得人们注意，这期《科学》杂志的特刊上有几篇文章集中反映了这几个方面。首先它提出了遍布大脑网络是各种行为发生的基础这个观点。在早期，这个领域的神经学家集中研究单个的大脑区域及它们的反应。感官区域尤其不可思议，例如，你可以合理地说视觉系统中那些反应外来者和心房柱的超复杂细胞是神经感官输入的组织基础。然而，下列事实在越来越清楚了：产生人类复杂活动（如学习和记忆）的信息处理过程涉及大脑的多个区域，这些区域肯定是以互动的平行方式运作的。

星期二

英译汉的技巧（一）

词义的选择、词性的转换、增译法、省译法

星期一我们学习了一些基本的翻译理论和英汉语言的差异,从今天开始,我们将学习 12 种常用的英译汉翻译方法和技巧:包括词义的选择、词性的转换法、增译法、省略法、重复法、反面着笔法、分句合句法、被动语态译法、长句译法和从句译法。今天要学习的内容是词义的选择,词性的转换,增、减译法。

一、词义的选择

词义的选择是翻译中最常用的翻译技巧,它也是英汉翻译中最基础的工作。准确把握词义,并在必要时适度地引申,是保证译文质量的前提条件。一方面,英语和汉语各自都有丰富的词汇,各自的词义又极其繁复;另一方面,这两种语言差异极大,其词义关系错综复杂,往往难以找到词义完全对应的词。

1. 根据词性确定词义。首先要判明这个词在原句中应属于哪一种词类,包括语体色彩,然后再进一步确定其词义。
2. 根据上下文判断词义。上下文为解决生词提供了突破口。
3. 根据汉语习惯搭配确定词义。与其他语言一样,汉语有其固有的表达习惯。因此,在翻译时应遵从汉语的习惯表达方式。

比如说英语中的 number,我们来看一下它在不同句子中的词义。

This car came hurtling towards me and I thought my number was up.

那辆车朝我疾驶过来的时候,我想我死定了。

You got to look after number one, right?

人总要为自己打算,不是吗?

Please tell me in round numbers what it will cost.

请告诉我大概的成本就行了。

I'm not worried about John. I've got his number and I know what to expect.

我不担心约翰,我了解他的招数,知道怎么应对。

The man who came to fix my roof certainly did a number on me. He said he'd do the work for \$1,000, but when he finished he charged me more than \$2,500!

来给我修屋顶的那个人骗了我,他起先开价 1000 美元,但是完工后却要了 2500 多美元!

She may not look like a number cruncher but she's with a big firm of accountants.

虽然她看起来不像是算术达人,但是她是一家知名的会计师事务所工作。

Our printer has broken down quite frequently in the past few months. Its days are probably **numbered**.

在过去的几个月里，我们的打印机常常出状况，估计也挨不了多久了。

Though it is just a back **number**, it is very important to me.

虽然这只是一本过期杂志，但它对我来说非常重要。

再来看一下 broken 的不同含义：

a broken man 一个绝望的人

a broken soldier 一个残废兵

broken money 零钱

二、词性的转换

由于英汉两种语言的差异，翻译时需酌情转换原文的某些词性，从而更加符合汉语表达习惯。把握词性转换法的关键是要领会其精神，学会举一反三、灵活运用。翻译时，考生要有词性转换的意识，切忌拘泥于原文句法。常见的词性转化法有：转化为动词、转化为名词、转化为形容词和转化为副词。

1 转化为动词

汉语中动词的使用率远远超过英语，所以翻译时需要将英语的介词词组、名词、形容词等转化为动词。例如：

Some philosophers argue that rights exist only within a social contract, as part of an exchange of duties and entitlements.

一些哲学家认为，权利只存在于社会契约中，是责任和权益交换的一部分。（介词变动词）

There is a *popular belief* among parents that schools are no longer interested in spelling.

家长们普遍认为，学校不再对教单词拼写感兴趣。（名词变动词）

Additional social stress may also occur because of the population explosion problems arising from mass migration movements.

由于大量人口流动所引起的人口激增问题也会增加一些社会压力。（形容词变动词，类似的形容词还有 sure, able, afraid, ashamed, aware, anxious, certain, concerned, doubtful, grateful, sorry 等。）

2 转化为名词

Theoretically, if one business tries to take unfair advantage of its customers, it will lose to competing business which treats its customers more fairly.

在理论上，如果商家试图从顾客那里赚取不义之财，那么他就会输给更能公平对待顾客的竞争对手。（副词变“介词+名词”）

This communication system is *chiefly characterized* by its simplicity of operation and the ease with which it can be maintained.

这种通信系统的主要特点是操作简单、维修方便。（动词变名词）

3 转化为形容词

More than 60 people died in this earthquake. By comparison, an earthquake of *similar*

intensity that shook America in 1988 claimed 25,000 victims.

这次地震中有 60 多人丧生。与之相比，1988 年美国发生的一次几乎同样强烈的地震则夺走了 25,000 人的生命。(名词变形容词)

The President had prepared *meticulously* for his journey.

总统为这次出访作了十分周密的准备。(副词变形容词)

4 形容词转化为副词

The application of electronic computers makes for a *tremendous* rise in labor productivity.

使用电子计算机可以大大提高劳动生产率。

If people find their daydreaming is becoming excessive, they should take a *realistic* look at what's going on in their life and ask themselves what they are trying to avoid.

如果人们发现自己的白日梦过多，那么他们就要现实地看待他们生活中正在发生的事情，并问问自己在试图逃避什么。

三、词的增译

增词法就是在翻译时根据意义上、修辞上和句法上的需要增加一些原文中无其词但有其意的词来忠实、通顺地表达原文的思想内容。

1 增加动词

根据意义上的需要，可以在名词前后增加动词。例如：

In the evening, *after the banquets, the concerts and the table tennis exhibition*, he would work on the drafting of the final communiqué.

晚上在参加宴会、出席音乐会、观看乒乓球表演之后，他还得起草最后公报。

There were *no speeches, no foreign diplomats, no "ordinary Chinese"* with paper flags and bouquets of flowers.

没有发表讲话，没有各国外交官到场，也没有“普通的中国人”挥舞纸旗和花束的场面。

2 增加形容词

With what *enthusiasm* the Chinese people are building socialism.

中国人民正在以多么高的热情建设社会主义啊！

The plane twisted under me, trailing *flame and smoke*.

(敌人的) 飞机在下面扭动盘旋，拖着浓烟烈焰掉了下去。

3 增加副词

根据原文的上下文，有些动词在一定场合要增加适当的副词，才能确切表达原意。例如：

In the films of those days, all too often it was the same one: boy tractor driver *meets* girl tractor driver, they *fall* in love and *drive* tractors together.

在那时候的电影里，总是老一套：男拖拉机手和女拖拉机手开始相遇，继而相爱，最终并肩开拖拉机了。

He was fascinated by the political processes: the wheeling and dealing of presidential politics, the *manipulating*, *releasing* and *leaking* of news, the public and private talks.

一幕幕政治花招真使他看得入迷了：总统竞选活动中的勾心斗角、尔虞我诈，对新闻消息的幕后操纵、公开发表和有意透露，以及公开和秘密的谈话。

4 增加名词

(1) 在不及物动词后面增加名词

英语中有些动词有时用做及物动词，有时用做不及物动词。当它做不及物动词时，宾语实际上是隐含在动词后面的，译成汉语时往往需要把它表达出来。例如，to wash before meal 的意思是“饭前洗手”，如果不译出隐含的宾语“手”，译文“饭前洗一洗”的意义就不明确。同样，to wash after getting up 和 to wash before going to bed 也应分别译成“起床后洗脸”和“睡前洗漱”。

(2) 在形容词前增加名词

He is a *complicated* man — moody, mercurial, with a melancholy streak.

他是一个性格复杂的人——喜怒无常，反复多变，有些忧郁寡欢。

A new kind of aircraft — *small, cheap, pilotless*—is attracting increasing attention.

一种新型的飞机正越来越引起人们的注意。这种飞机体积不大、价钱便宜且无人驾驶。

5 增加概括词

英语和汉语都有概括词。英语中的 in short, and so on, etc. 等，翻译时可以分别译为“总之”、“等等”……但有时英语句子中并没有概括词，而翻译时却往往可增加“两人”、“双方”、“等”、“等等”、“凡此种种”等概括词，同时省略掉英语中的连接词。

例如：

The Americans and the Japanese conducted a completely secret exchange of messages.

美日双方在完全保密的情况下互相交换了信件。

It is remarkably clear. It shows streets and factories and a winding river and docks and submarine pens.

它（照片）十分清晰，从中可以看出街道、工厂、一条蜿蜒的河流、码头、潜艇修藏坞等。

6 增加承上启下的词

Yes, I like Chinese food. Lots of people do these days, sort of the fashion.

不错，我喜欢中国菜。现在很多人喜欢中国菜，这种情况算是有点赶时髦吧！

For mistakes had been made, bad ones.

因为已经犯了许多错误，而且还是很糟的错误。

四、词的省译

由于英汉两种语言在词汇、语法和修辞上的差异，有些词语或句子成分，在英语中是必不可少的，但若搬到译文中去，就会影响译文的简洁和通顺，这时，就有省译原文中的某些词语或句子成分的必要。省译不是删掉原文中某些内容，而是为了避免内容重复、文

字累赘，使译文更符合汉语的习惯。同时必须注意，在不宜省译的情况下，不要随便省译，避免发生篡改原文的严重后果。现将各种省译的情况列举如下。

1 冠词的省译

英语有冠词，汉语却无冠词。一般说来，英译汉时，冠词可省略。例如：

The ampere is the unit of electric current.

安培是电流的单位。

The water of the sea contains a considerable amount of salt.

海水中含有大量的盐分。

2 代词的省译

(1) 人称代词的省译。根据汉语习惯，在一段文字中，前句出现一个主语，后句如仍为同一主语，就不必重复出现，而英语每句必有主语，因此，一段文字中人称代词常常出现多次，这种人称代词英译汉时可以省略。例如：

When carbon burns, it unites with oxygen from the air.

碳燃烧时同空气中的氧结合。

They worked so hard that they overfulfilled their plan.

他们努力工作，从而超额完成了计划。

英语中常常用 *it* 作为形式主语或宾语，而把作为实际主语或宾语的不定式、动名词或从句放在后面，这种结构中的 *it* 没有词汇意义，英译汉时可省略。

(2) 物主代词的省译。为了强调其他成分（如宾语）与主语之间的所属关系，英语在结构上和习惯上常常使用物主代词。英译汉时，这类物主代词可省略。例如：

We are doing our physical experiments.

我们正在做物理实验。

Plants obtain their energy from sunlight.

植物从阳光中获得能量。

(3) 反身代词的省译。根据汉语的习惯，某些用做宾语或同位语的反身代词，英译汉时可省略。例如：

Why do we feel cooler when we fan ourselves?

我们扇扇子时为什么感到凉快些？

How do atoms arrange themselves in a solid?

原子在固体中是如何排列的？

3 介词的省译

大量使用介词是英语的特点之一，如逐词译出，势必有很多虚词，显得累赘。因此，英译汉时，介词常省略。

(1) 省略某些表示时间的介词

In 1975, China successfully launched its third, fourth and fifth man made earth satellites.

1975 年，中国成功地发射了第三、第四和第五颗人造地球卫星。

This motor has run for ten hours.

这台电动机已经运转 10 小时了。

(2) 省略某些表示地点的介词

The first electronic computer was produced *in* our country *in* 1958.

1958年，我国生产了第一台电子计算机。

There are different elements *in* nature.

自然界有各种不同的元素。

(3) 省略某些介词短语中的介词

The problem is *of* importance.

这个问题很重要。

This light bulb has a resistance *of* 120 ohms.

这个灯泡的电阻为120欧姆。

4 连接词的省译

汉语中词与词之间的关系主要靠句序来表达，句子与句子之间的关系常用连接词来表达，但有时暗含于句序之间，无需连接词。英语中词与词之间的关系和句子与句子之间的关系主要靠连接词来表达。因此，英译汉时，常常省略连接词。例如：

Go *and* see if they are still in the laboratory.

请去看看他们是否还在实验室里。

Therefore the transformer can be used to step up *or* step down alternating voltage.

因此，变压器能用来升降交流电压。

5 动词的省译

英语中，谓语动词是一个必不可少的成分，而汉语则不然，句中可以没有动词，直接用形容词、名词做谓语。因此，英译汉时，可根据汉语的习惯把原文中的动词省略。例如：

The development of new science and technology has also *resulted in* a need for comprehensive knowledge in the technical field.

新的科学技术的发展，也需要技术领域的全面知识。

When the pressure *gets* low, the bolting-point *becomes* low.

气压低，沸点就低。

6 同义词或近义词的省译

英语中，有些同义词或近义词往往可以连用，或者表示强调，使意思更加明确；或者表示同一事物的不同名称。英译汉时，常常不必或不能译成同义词或近义词连用的形式，译出其中的一个就行了。例如：

Semiconductor devices have no *filaments or heaters* and therefore require no heating power or warming up time.

半导体器件没有灯丝，因此不需要加热功率或加热时间。

It is essential that the *mechanic or technician* understand well the characteristics of battery circuits and the proper methods for connecting *batteries and cells*.

重要的是技术人员要深入了解电池电路的特性和连接电池的适当办法。

每日训练

1. 翻译下列各句，注意根据上下文及搭配关系来确定斜体词的词义。

(1) account for

- 1) He is ill; that *accounts for* his absence.
- 2) In this battle he *accounted for* five of the enemy.
- 3) I want you to *account for* every cent you spent.

(2) make up

- 1) If the stove isn't *made up*, it will go out.
- 2) There isn't any girl called Clementine. He's just *made her up*.
- 3) Half the roads in the region are still to be *made up*.
- 4) Society is *made up* of people with widely differing abilities.
- 5) It took Laurence Oliver more than an hour to *make up* for the part of "Othello".
- 6) They *made up* a bed on the sofa for the unexpected visitor.
- 7) We have to drive fast to *make up* the hour we lost in Boston.

(3) figure

- 1) The foreign trade has risen to unprecedented *figures*.
- 2) Dr. Eliot was one of the most revered *figures* in the world of learning.
- 3) On the desk there was a bronze *figure* of Plato.
- 4) He saw dim *figures* moving towards him.
- 5) June was good at *figure* skating.

2. 词性转换练习

- 1) At the *thought* of the mishap his legs stiffened under him and couldn't move a step further. (名词转化为动词)
- 2) We are quite *sure* that the socialist system will replace the capitalist system in the end. (形容词转化为动词)
- 3) She promptly *shepherded* them out of the crowded living room and into the *privacy* of the library. (名词转化为形容词)
- 4) *Warm* discussions arose on every corner as to his achievements. (形容词转化为副词)
- 5) The sun rose *thinly* from the sea. (副词转化为形容词)

3. 增词练习

- 1) My *work*, my *family*, my *friends* were more than enough to fill my time. (名词前加动词)
- 2) With the meeting to begin in just a couple of hours, I hadn't the *time* to worry about such trifles. (名词前加形容词)
- 3) They *lingered* long over his letter. (动词前加副词)
- 4) He was *wrinkled* and *black*, with scant gray hair. (形容词前加名词)
- 5) You might just take a look at my coat before this afternoon. See if it wants pressing. (数次后加量词)

4. 省词练习

- 1) If you have read these stories, tell them in *your* own words. (省略代词)
- 2) *When* the board was spinning slowly, you could see all the different colours. (省略连词)
- 3) When I got to *the* wharf, *the* steamer had already started. (省略冠词)

5. 综合练习

- 1) As an ecological approach to Translation Studies, Eco-translatology views translation as an entire translational eco-system, and focuses on the relationship between the translator and this translational eco-environment. A translational eco-environment is construed as a highly integrated entity that comprises the actual text, the cultural context and the human agents, as well as other tangible and intangible ingredients. In Eco-translatology, translation activities are described and interpreted in terms of such ecological principles as holism, relevance, dynamics, balance and harmony, together with ecological aesthetics. Some elements of classical Chinese or Oriental philosophies and cultural quintessence are projected in this nascent approach.
- 2) The thirty-second day out of Bombay began inauspiciously. In the morning a sea smashed one of the galley doors. We dashed in through lots of steam and found the cook very wet and indignant with the ship. She's getting worse every day. She's trying to drown me in front of my own stove! He was very angry. We pacified him, and the carpenter, though washed away twice from there, managed to repair the door. Through that accident our dinner was not ready till late, but it didn't matter in the end because Knowles, who went to fetch it, got knocked down by a sea and the dinner went over the side. Captain Allistoun looking more hard and thin-lipped than ever, hung on to full topsails and foresail, and would not notice that the ship, asked to do too much, appeared to lose heart altogether for the first time since we knew her.
- 3) To speak of American literature, then, is not to assert that it is completely unlike that of Europe. Broadly speaking, America and Europe have kept step. At any given moment the traveler could find examples in both of the same architecture, the same styles in dress, the same books on the shelves. Ideas have crossed the Atlantic as freely as men and merchandise, though sometimes more slowly. When I refer to American habit, thoughts, etc., I intend some sort of qualification to precede the word, for frequently the difference between America and Europe (especially England) will be one of degree, sometimes only of a small degree. The amount of divergence is a subtle affair, liable to perplex the Englishman when he looks at America. He is looking at a country which in important senses grew out of his own, which in several ways still resembles his own — and which is yet a foreign country. There are odd overlappings and abrupt unfamiliarities; kinship yields to a sudden alienation, as when we hail a person across the street, only to discover from his blank response that we have mistaken a stranger for a friend.

参考译文

1. (1) 1) 他病了，这就是他缺席的原因。
 2) 他在这场战斗中消灭了五个敌人。
 3) 我要你把花费的每分钱都交代清楚。
 (2) 1) 如不添煤，炉子就会熄灭。
 2) 根本没有一个叫克莱门蒂的姑娘，全是他捏造出来的。
 3) 这地区的路面有一半还没有修好。
 4) 社会是由具有迥然不同的能力的人组成的。
 5) 为扮演“奥赛罗”这个角色，劳伦斯·奥利弗花了一个多小时化妆。
 6) 他们把沙发收拾了一下让这位不速之客睡。
 7) 我们不得不加快速度，以弥补在波士顿所耽误的时间。
 (3) 1) 对外贸易的数字有了空前的增长。
 2) 埃利奥特博士是学术界最受人尊敬的人物之一。
 3) 书桌上有一尊柏拉图的铜像。
 4) 他隐隐约约看见一些人影在向他跟前移动。
 5) 琼善于花式滑冰。
2. 1) 他一想到这场灾难，两腿就像有千斤重，再也挪不动一步了。
 2) 我们深信，社会主义制度终究会代替资本主义制度。
 3) 她立即把他们领出拥挤的客厅，带到了没人注意的图书馆里去。
 4) 到处在热烈地谈论他的成就。
 5) 淡淡的太阳从海上升起。
3. 1) 我干工作、我做家务、我有朋友往来，这些占用了我全部的时间。
 2) 不出两小时会议就要开始，我没有闲工夫为这些琐事操心。
 3) 他们不断反复玩味着他的来信。
 4) 他满脸皱纹，皮肤很黑，头发灰白稀疏。
 5) 你最好在下午以前瞧一下我的上衣，看是否要熨一下。
4. 1) 如果你已读过这些故事，那用你自己的话讲出来。
 2) 纸板慢慢旋转时，你能看到所有的不同颜色。
 3) 我到码头的时候，轮船已经开了。
5. 1) 生态翻译学作为翻译学的一种生态途径，把翻译视为整个翻译生态系统，聚焦译者与翻译生态环境之间的关系。人们把翻译生态系统解释为一个高度完整的实体，这个实体是由实际环境、文化环境、以人为主体的以及其他有形的物质和无形的成分构成的。在生态翻译学中，人们把翻译活动描述并理解成如整体论、相对论、动力学、平衡协调论和生态美学等生态法则。这种新生的方法折射出的是古文、东方哲学和文化精髓的某些元素。
 2) 离开孟买港的第三十二天那天，一开始就很不吉利。早晨一个巨浪哗啦一声把厨房的一扇门冲坏了。我们在层层蒸汽中冲进了厨房，只见厨师浑身湿漉漉的，在生船的气。她变得越来越糟糕了，她想把我淹死在炉子前！厨师生气极了。我们使他平静了下来。木匠虽然被海水冲走了两次，但还是设法把门修好了。由于这个事故，我们的正餐很晚才准备好。不过结果并不要紧了，因为去打饭的诺利斯被一个巨浪冲倒，把

饭菜都倒进了大海里。阿里斯顿船长的神情显得比平时还要紧张严肃，他坚持要上桅帆和前桅帆，使它们处于满帆状态，压根儿不理睬船由于负担过重而第一次让我们看到她完全失去了信心。

- 3) 因此，我们在说“美国”文学，并不表明我们认为美国文学与欧洲文学截然不同。一般来说，美国和欧洲一直在同步发展。无论何时，旅游者在两地都能看到同一样式的建筑，见到同一款式的服饰，读到摆在书架上的同一风格的书籍。在大西洋两岸，人们的思想观念就如同人员与货物一样，可以自由交换，尽管有时会略显迟缓。谈到美国人的习惯、美国人的思维等概念时，我想在“美国式的”这几个词前面再加上某种修饰，因为欧美之间（尤其是英美之间）的差异往往只是程度上的差异，而且在有的时候，是极低程度上的差异。差异的程度微乎其微，很可能会使审视美国的英国人感到迷惑不解。重要的是，英国人所审视的这个国家诞生于英国，并在不少方面仍与英国相差无几——然而，实实在在是个异邦。两地有着莫名的共同之处，以及令人深感突兀的陌生感。原先的亲戚已形同陌路，就仿佛隔着马路打招呼，等看到对方一脸茫然时，我们才意识到认错了人。

星期三

英译汉的技巧（二） 重复法、反面着笔法、 分句、合句法

一、重复法

英语和汉语一样，写文章总是尽量避免重复。然而在英译汉中重复却是一种必不可少的翻译技巧，因为翻译时往往需要重复原文中某些词，才能使译文表达得明确具体。重复译法主要有三个功能：一是为了表达上的更明确，二是为了强调，三是为了更加生动活泼。

（一）为了表达更明确

1. 名词的重复翻译

（1）重复做宾语的名词

You need and deserve admiration.

你需要让人羡慕，也值得让人羡慕。

We have to analyze and solve problems.

我们必须分析问题和解决问题。

The chief effects of electric currents are the magnetic, heating, and chemical effects.

电流的主要效应是磁效应、热效应和化学效应。

（2）重复做表语的名词

David is your supervisor as much as he is ours.

大卫既是你们的指导员，也是我们的指导员。

He finally became a millionaire — all by himself.

他最终成为了一个百万富翁——一个白手起家的百万富翁。

（3）重复做定语的名词

Metals are the best conductors and gases the poorest conductors of heat.

金属是热的最佳导体，而气体则是热的最差导体。

1) 重复英语介词短语前所省略的名词

英语中常重复使用介词短语，共同做某一名词的后置定语，并将第二个及之后介词短语前的名词省略。译成汉语时往往需要将此名词重复翻译。

Mary often gets into argument with her colleagues or with her boss.

玛丽经常和她的同事们争吵，或者同老板争吵。

Ignorance is the mother of fear as well as of admiration.

无知是羡慕的根源，也是恐惧的根源。

Marketing economy is itself the product of long course of development, of a series of

revolutions in the modes of production and of exchange.

市场经济本身是一个长期发展过程的产物，是生产方式和交换方式一系列变革的产物。

2) 重复英语中做先行词的名词

英语定语从句常用关系词来引导，汉语中虽然没有关系词，但在英译汉时，往往需要重复翻译这个先行词的名词。

He spent all his salary of this month in buying her a gift, which she longed for a long time.

他花了他这个月所有的工资给她买了个礼物，这个礼物她向往已久了。

We love our hometown Beijing, which is the capital of China.

我们热爱我们的家乡北京，北京是中国的首都。

翻译英语中的同位语时，在译文中有时也可以重复翻译先行词。

Water can be decomposed by energy, a current of electricity.

水可由能量来分解，所谓能量，也就是电流。

2. 动词的重复翻译

(1) 英语句子常用一个动词连接几个宾语或表语，在汉语译文中往往重复这个动词。

Reading makes a full man; conference a ready man; writing an exact man.

读书使人充实，讨论使人机智，写作使人准确。

Under ordinary conditions of pressure, water becomes ice at 0°C and steam at 100°C.

在常压下，水在零摄氏度时变成冰，在100摄氏度时变成蒸汽。

Among the four pictures, two appear to be real, others false.

在这四幅画中，有两幅看起来是真的，另外两幅看起来则是赝品。

(2) 英语句子中动词后的介词多次重复使用而省略动词，在汉语译文中则要重复动词以代替英语中重复的介词。

We talked of ourselves, of our prospects, of the journey, of the weather, of each other, of everything.

我们谈论自己、谈论前途、谈论旅程、谈论天气、谈论彼此、谈论所有的事情。

(3) 为了避免文章单调乏味，用英语写作时会尽量避免重复，经常会用到不同的动词，在译成中文时，可以翻译成重复的动词，组成漂亮的排比句。

It denotes input image, LI represents light intensity of the scene, K defines atmospheric scattering coefficient, SD indicates scene depth.

It 表示输入图像，LI 表示场景的光线强度，K 表示大气散射系数，SD 表示是场景深度。

3. 代词的重复翻译

(1) 英语用代词替代前文所属的人或物，因此代词在英文句子里出现频繁。翻译时往往按汉语习惯重复其所代替的名词。

Judy opened her eyes. They were filled with tears.

朱迪睁开眼睛，眼睛里充满了泪水。

(2) 英语中强势关系代词或强势关系副词 **whoever, whenever, wherever** 等，翻译成汉语时往往使用重复译法处理。

Whoever violates the law should be punished.

谁违反了法律，谁就应该受到惩罚。

It always cause me to see red whenever he tells a lie.

当他说谎时，不管什么时候总是引起我的愤怒。

Whoever works hard will be paid.

谁努力工作，谁就会收到回报。

(3) 英语中 some ... and others (some ... , others ...) 连用的句子，译成汉语时往往用谓语重复形式的“的”字结构，有时也可用“有的……，有的……”句式。

Some are singing songs, others are painting.

唱歌的唱歌，画画的画画。(或：有的在唱歌，有的在画画。)

4. 同义部分的重复翻译

在英语文章中，有时为了避免用词重复，会采用同义词或近义词来代替前面出现过的词。但翻译时，要重复译出，以求得译名同义，避免误解。

While small generators frequently have revolving armatures, large machines usually have stationary armatures and revolving field.

通常，小型发电机采用旋转电枢，而大型发电机则采用固定电枢和旋转磁场。(machines 仍重复为“发电机”，而不译为“机器”。)

On July 14, 1965, Mariner IV passed within 6,000 miles of Mars and transmitted back to the earth 21 pictures of the surface of the planet.

1965年7月14日“海员四号”在离火星不到6000英里处经过火星，把21幅火星表面的照片传回地球。(planet 仍重复译为“火星”，而不译为“行星”。)

(二) 为了强调

英语原文中有词的重复，译成汉语时可以保持同样的词的重复。

He wandered along the street, thinking and thinking, brooding and brooding.

他在街头游来荡去，想了又想，盘算了又盘算。

Work while you work, play while you play.

该工作时就工作，该玩时就玩。

英语原文没有词的重复，译成汉语时有时可以用重复法或者同义词来重复。

He was proficient both as a flyer and as a navigator.

他既精于飞行，又善于导航。(原文中形容词 proficient 没有重复，汉语译文却以“精于”、“善于”两个不同形式的词重复同一个内容。)

(三) 为了生动活泼

出于译文行文上的考虑，有时虽然英文原文中没有词的重复，翻译时为了使译文生动，有时也可以采用一些重译手段。

1. 运用两个四字词组

汉语中有大量四字词组，这是汉语的一大特点。为了使译文符合忠实、通顺的标准，考生有时可酌情运用两个同义或近义的四字词组，这也可以说是一种重复。

He showed himself calm in an emergency situation.

他在情况危急时，态度从容，镇定自若。

There had been too much publicity about his love affairs.

他的风流韵事已经是满城风雨、人尽皆知了。

2. 运用词的重叠

词的重叠是汉语中常用的一种修辞手段。英译汉时，我们可适当采用这种手段，特别是字重叠词组，使译文生动活泼、通顺达意。

His boasts were flat.

他的祝酒词平平淡淡。

The kid is always in rags as if he were an orphan.

那个孩子整天穿得破破烂烂，就像个孤儿似的。

3. 运用四字对偶词组

汉语中有不少四字对偶词组，在这四字中前后两对字形成对偶，往往具有相同或类似的含义，所以也是一种重复。英译汉时我们可酌情采用此类四字对偶词组，使译文显得生动活泼。

The trial, in his opinion, was absolutely fair.

据他看来，这次审判是绝对公平合理的。

But at that time, he was the only man there.

但是当时他是那里独一无二的男人。

最后，需要注意的是，重复法也不可盲目滥用。过度重复会使译文啰唆累赘、单调乏味。只有在准确理解原文的基础上，灵活运用重复法才能让译文表达得更加准确、更加通顺。

二、反面着笔法

1 英语否定句反译为汉语肯定句

(1) 双重否定句。从英语中的否定句所表达的意思看，可分为双重否定句和一般否定句。双重否定句是指在一个句子中两次运用了否定手段。英语的双重否定形式通常由否定词 *no* (*not*) 等与某些表示否定意义的词连用构成，表达委婉或强调的语气。由于双重否定实质上等于肯定，所以常把英语的双重否定句反译为汉语的肯定句，以便尽量把英语双重否定句所含有的各种肯定语气和修辞效果表现出来。例如：

Never did he hear the story without being moved to tears.

每当听到这个故事，他都感动得热泪盈眶。

There is no rule that has no exception.

所有的规则都有例外。

(2) 一般否定句。这儿所说的一般否定句指的是含有 *no* (*not*) 或带否定词缀的词或短语的句子。在某些情况下，这类句子也可翻译成肯定句。例如：

I watched with disbelief as a number was put on my right arm.

当一个号码条被戴在我右前臂时，我怀疑地看着。

Students, with no exception, are to hand in their papers this afternoon.

所有学生，一律必须今天下午交论文。

2 英语中肯定表达，翻译成汉语时用否定表达

(1) 英语中有一些句子从形式或结构上看是肯定的，但由于这些句子中含有一些具有否定意义的词或词组，在翻译这类句子时，一般均采用反译处理，将其译为否定句。

1) 句中含有否定意义的动词或动词词组，这类动词或动词词组常见的有 *avoid*, *cease*, *defy*, *decline*, *deny*, *exclude*, *fail*, *lack*, *loss*, *ignore*, *miss*, *overlook*, *refuse*, *keep from*, *prevent from*, *protect from* 等。例如：

It was a shame that my first shot *missed* the target in the sports meeting.

运动会中我的第一次射击没有上靶，真是丢脸。

The manufacturer declines responsibility for the consequences of an *inadequate* storage.

对因保管不当而产生的后果，制造厂不承担责任。

2) 句中含有否定意义的名词，这类名词有 *absence*, *neglect*, *lack*, *few*, *loss*, *refusal*, *conclusion*, *failure* 等。例如：

If spaceships were launched from space or from the moon, the *absence* of weight would permit the ships to be launched with great speed at reduced pressures.

太空或月球上无多大重力作用，宇宙飞船如果从那里发射，就可在较小的压力下以巨大的速度发射出去。

To a great extent the value placed on gold and silver is due to their *lack* of reactivity.

金银之所以有价值，在很大程度上是由于它们不易发生化学反应。

3) 句中含有否定意义的形容词或形容词短语，这类形容词或形容词短语有 *few*, *little*, *short of*, *free from*, *free of*, *safe from*, *independent of* 等。例如：

Not many years ago, it was supposed that life was altogether *absent* in the deeper parts of the sea.

就在几年前，人们还认为海洋深处完全没有生命。

Artificial blood is *free* of the risks of communicable diseases such as hepatitis or AIDS.

(使用) 人造血液不存在被肝炎或艾滋病等疾病传染的危险。

4) 句中有表示否定意义的副词，这类副词常见的有 *less*, *hardly*, *barely*, *seldom*, *rarely*, *simply* 等。例如：

A cold bath makes the individual *less* susceptible to common cold.

冷水浴可使人不易患感冒。

It is a common expression to characterize something as “light as air”, but air is *hardly* “light”.

通常人们总形容某个东西“轻如空气”，其实空气并不“轻”。

5) 句中有表示否定的介词，这类介词有 *apart from*, *beyond*, *out of*, *above*, *without*, *instead of* 等。例如：

Women giving birth are often offered acupuncture *instead of* pain-killing drugs.

分娩的妇女现常用针刺镇痛，而不用止痛药物。

What he said is *above* our comprehension.

他讲的东西我们无法理解。

6) 句中有表示否定意义的连词或其他一些固定词组，这类连词或词组常见的有 *before*, *but*, *lest*, *unless*, *but that*, *rather than*, *far from*, *too ... to*, *too... for* 等。例如：

The success rate in lung, heart or liver transplants is *far from* satisfactory.

肺、心脏和肝脏的手术移植成功率远不能令人满意。

The firm will go under *unless* business improves.

生意若无起色，公司非垮不可。

The soldiers would fight to death *before* they surrendered.

士兵们宁可战斗到死都不会投降。

(2) 句中不含否定意义的词或词组的肯定句称为完全肯定句。

在翻译成汉语时，有时也把这种肯定句翻译成否定句。例如：

The Moon is a world that is completely and utterly dead, a sterile mountainous waste.
月球是一个毫无生机世界，是多山的不毛之地。

The subversion attempts proved predictably futile.
不出所料，颠覆活动被证明毫无结果。

三、分句、合句法

英汉两种语言不但在词法方面存在差别，而且在句法上也有很大的差异。英语句子长，动词少，语序灵活，讲究平衡；而汉语句子短，动词多，语序比较固定，讲究对称。因此，翻译时会遇到这样的情况：如果把英语的一个句子照译为汉语的一个句子，译文结构会显得臃肿，甚至给人逻辑混乱、事理模糊的感觉。在这种情况下，如能按照原文的主次关系和逻辑层次把其中某一部分拆开处理，即把一句话分译成汉语的几句话来表达，往往可使译文流畅，表达准确。这种处理方法叫做分句译法。

与分译法相反的就是合译法。如果原文有两个或两个以上的句子，虽然各有一套主谓结构，并由句号断开，但相互间却存在着各种关系，语意关联非常紧密，有些在意义上还是一个主语，如勉强按原文形式翻译，会使译文支离破碎、逻辑松散。在这种情况下，如能把它们紧缩成一个句子，反而可使译文简洁紧凑、生动耐读，且原文的意思也表达得更为明确和严谨。这便是合句译法。

1 分句译法

所谓简单句，是指只包括一套主谓结构的句子。在多数情况下，英语简单句可以译成汉语的单句。但在有些情况下，译成汉语的一个单句尚不足以把原意表达明确，且译句不太通顺，这时就需要对原文层次加以适当调整、按照汉语多用短句的习惯，把句中的某一成分分译出来，单独表达。

(1) 主语的分译

英语句子的主语有时不是单个的名词或代词等，而是带有很长定语的名词或代词，或者是一个短语或从句。这样把较长的主语照译为汉语句子的主语后往往会使译文累赘不堪，头重脚轻。这就需要把这种主语成分单独分译成汉语的一个小句子，接着再用汉语指示代词“这”加以归纳，以使译文结构匀称。例如：

To find hottest and coldest parts of the solar system on Mercury is quite strange.

人们发现太阳系中最冷和最热的地方都在水星上，这是颇为奇怪的。

(2) 谓语的分译

谓语的分译主要指被动句中的谓语，尤其是其后有主语补足语的被动态谓语。在这类句子中，谓语很难和句子的其他成分译在一起。如勉强译出，会使译文艰涩、别扭，不符合汉语表达习惯。因此，此时往往可以把谓语单独分译出来，使原主语和主语补足语构成一个完整的句子。要说明的是，这样分译谓语时，常需添加适当的译词。例如：

As the hole is made, a steel pipe is pushed down to stop the sides from falling in, and to keep out water in the ground.

钻井时，要下钢管，以防井壁坍塌和地下水浸入。

(3) 定语的分译

英语中的定语除了可以是单个的形容词、名词、代词等前置定语外，还可以是短语——介词短语、形容词短语、分词短语、不定式短语——型的后置定语。如果做后置定

语的短语较长，或者与被修饰的词的关系比较松散，或者难以与被修饰的词译在一起，就可以将其单独分译成一个句子，以使译文简洁易读。这种定语的分译在翻译中相当常见。例如：

These improvements have brought the tank to a degree of sophistication unimagined 20 years ago.

这些改进措施已使坦克高度完善，这在 20 年前是无法想象的。

(4) 状语的分译

英语句子中状语的分译是简单句分译中最常见、最广泛的一种。英语状语可由副词、介词短语、分词短语、不定式短语等表示，这几种形式的状语在必要时都可以分译成单独的句子。例如：

She was pardonably proud of her wonderful cooking.

她以她高超的烹调技艺为荣，这是情有可原的。

(5) 宾语的分译

英语中有一些动词要求有复合宾语（即宾语和宾语补足语）。由于这种复合宾语的结构一般较长，而且大多数宾语及其补足语之间存在着逻辑上的主谓关系，因此为了汉语表达的需要，应把这种复合宾语分译成单独的一个句子。例如：

The study found a direct link between the amount of fish in the diet and the rate of death from heart disease.

这项研究发现，在饮食中鱼所占的比重与心脏病的死亡率有着直接的关系。

2 合句译法

合句译法是与分句译法相反的一种翻译手法。如上面所讲，由于英汉两种语言的遣词造句习惯不同，使用标点符号和表示停顿的习惯也不尽一致，因此在翻译中会遇到这样的情况：原文里相连的两个或两个以上的句子，虽然各有一套主谓结构，并由句号断开，但相互之间却存在着各种关系，语意关系非常紧密，有些在意义上还是同一个主语。如勉强按原文翻译，会使译文支离破碎、逻辑松散。在这种情况下，如能把它们紧缩为一个句子或含有两个（或两个以上）分句的一个句子，反而可使译文简洁紧凑、生动耐读，且原文的意思也表达得更为明确和严谨。这就是合句译法。

和分句译法相比，合句译法所涉及的范围要小一些。以下主要讨论英语简单句合译的几种情况。

所谓简单句的合译，是指把英语中两个或两个以上相邻的、由句号断开的简单句合并译成汉语的一个单句或包含两个或两个以上分句的一个句子。一般适于以下几种情况。

(1) 句间有补述关系。有时，英语前后两个句子的语意关联非常紧密，不可分割，最常见的是后句对前句的内容进行解释、说明和总结性的补述。在这种情况下，为了完整地表达出原意，可把原文的几个独立句合译为汉语一句中的几个分句。例如：

The weather in London is always changeable. Sometimes it rains, sometimes it is fine, and more often it is foggy.

伦敦的天气总是变化莫测：有时下雨，有时晴，而且经常大雾茫茫。

(2) 句间有并列关系。有时，英语中相邻的两个简单句在意义上存在并列关系，两者地位平等。此时可把这两个简单句合译成汉语一个并列句中的两个分句。例如：

A liquid takes the shape of the container in which it is held. A solid, on the other hand, keeps its own shape.

液体取它所在容器的形状，固体则保持自身的形状。

(3) 句间有因果关系。相邻的两个英语简单句，如果存在着逻辑上的因果关系，甚至还有表示这种关系的关联词语，则不论是前句为因，后句为果，还是前句为果，而后句为因，都可将这两个简单句合译为汉语的一个偏正复句，必要时可加适当的关联词。例如：

In its pure state aluminum is soft, ductile and not very strong. As a result it is not often used in this state.

纯铝软且富延展性，但强度较差，所以不太常用。

(4) 句间有转折、条件等关系。相邻的两个英语简单句，如在意义上有明显的或隐含的转折关系，或者还有表示转折关系的关联词语，便可合译成汉语的一个复句。例如：

The side of the moon toward the sun gets two degrees hotter than boiling water. The night side reaches 243 degree below zero.

月亮面对太阳的一面的温度比沸水的温度还高出两度，但背对太阳的一面却冷到零下243度。

(5) 共用一个主语。有时，英语里前后两个或几个句子，不仅语意密切相关，而且主语也是同一个（后句往往用代词做主语）。对于这种情况，翻译时常要合并译成一个句子，并以一个主语贯穿几个分句。这种情况在简单句的合译中比较常见。例如：

He would miss many things and many people. He would miss Celia.

他会想念很多人和物，也会想念西莉雅。

每日训练

1. 重复法练习题，注意斜体字部分的翻译。

- 1) It was he who first repudiated and breached *the understanding*.
- 2) This *requires* care and, for difficult problems, great experience.
- 3) But there are clues, and *they* seem to bear out my earlier suspicion.
- 4) No pains, no gains. (用同义词表达原文中重复的词)
- 5) Instead we continued to *embellish* the cover story, walking blindly into his trap. (用意义相互补充的四字词组)
- 6) I wasn't *evasive* in my reply. (四字重叠词)
- 7) His folks *ate up* everything he had. (同义词重复)

2. 反面着笔法练习，注意斜体字部分的翻译。

- 1) If he had *kept* his temper, the negotiation would probably have been a success.
- 2) Her face had a strange, *lost* look.
- 3) Never mind, we can manage *without* help.
- 4) You will fail *unless* you work harder.
- 5) His explanation is *far from* being satisfactory.
- 6) Miss Fairlie *kept to her room* all day.
- 7) As *was expected*, the enemy walked right into the trap.

3. 分句、合句法

- 1) He stalked away, but with a *gnawing* uncertainty in his breast. (将斜体部分分译)
- 2) But they had become nomads of the desert, *living on the ground and under the sky, and they loved it*. (将斜体部分分译)

- 3) *The ample yard in back is dominated by heavily bearing fruit trees.* (将斜体部分分译)
- 4) When I came to summit, I became very excited. (合译)
- 5) It was 1953, and I had just come from Kilkelly, Ireland, to seek my fortune.

4. 综合练习

- 1) It goes without saying, then, that language is also a political instrument, means, and proof of power. It is the most vivid and crucial key to identity. It reveals the private identity, and connects one with, or divorces one from, the larger public, or communal identity. There have been, and are, times, and places, when to speak a certain language could be dangerous, even fatal. Or, one may speak the same language, but in such a way that one's antecedents are revealed, or (one hopes) hidden. This is true in France, and is absolutely true in England. The range (and reign) of accents on that damp little island make England coherent for the English and totally incomprehensible for everyone else. To open your mouth in English is (if I may use Black English) to "put your business in the street". You have confessed your parents, your youth, your school, your salary, your self-esteem, and, alas, your future.
- 2) Want to insult a woman? Then offer her a compliment. Only half of women actually enjoy being praised and many others misinterpret well-meant words as offensive, according to new research.

And "you look well" is one of the worst things a man can say to a woman — because she just thinks it means she looks fat. Other compliments likely to backfire include telling a woman that you like her make-up, or that her dress is figure hugging. Calling a woman "curvy" or saying she looks like her mother or father are also absolute no-nos, according to a survey that will ring true to husbands who decided long ago that paying their wives compliments is more trouble than it's worth. The social minefield was revealed in a new survey by a health-care company that interviewed more than 2,000 men and women. It found that many women view compliments as "backhanded" and are likely to throw them back in your face.

The best way to compliment a woman is to mention her weight loss, saying that she looks thinner than normal. Around 43 percent of those surveyed said this was the best compliment. A further four in 10 are happiest when someone comments on their gorgeous smile. Focusing on the way a woman smells, how nice her hair is, or what beautiful eyes she has are also unlikely to be misinterpreted.

But men should avoid talking about how well a woman looks as she will think he is saying she is fat. Other backhanded compliments include "you're not as stupid as you look" and "you don't look as bad as I thought you would". Women also hate anyone to make reference to their "large features" and are particularly unimpressed if someone says they are strong or broad. More than one in 10 misunderstood praise about their make-up, assuming they were wearing too much.

参考译文

1. 1) 是他首先否定了这一谅解，破坏了这一谅解。
2) 这就需要细心，而且对许多困难问题来说，还需要丰富的经验。
3) 但还是有蛛丝马迹可寻的。这些蛛丝马迹似乎都足以证实我最初的揣测。
4) 不下苦功就没有收获。
5) 而事实却不然，我们仍然对那个掩盖真相的假情况添油加醋，大肆渲染，从而盲人骑瞎马地陷入了他布置的圈套。
6) 我的回答并非躲躲闪闪。
7) 他一家人把他所有的东西都吃尽喝光。
2. 1) 假如他不发脾气，谈判很可能已经成功了。
2) 她的脸上有一种奇异的、不知所措的神情。
3) 不要紧，没人帮忙我们也能对付。
4) 要是不更努力些，你会失败的。
5) 他的说明绝不能令人满意。
6) 费尔莉小姐终日足不出户。
7) 不出所料，敌人果然自投罗网。
3. 1) 他昂首阔步地走开，心里半信半疑，感到十分苦恼。
2) 可是他们都变成沙漠里的牧民了，生活在苍天之下、黄土上。他们喜欢这种生活。
3) 屋后是个宽敞的院子，大部分都给果实累累的果树占据了。
4) 到达山顶时我非常兴奋。
5) 1953年，我刚从爱尔兰的克尔克勒来此寻找出路。
4. 1) 那么不言而喻，语言也是一种政治工具，是可以用来证明权力的手段。语言对于身份而言是极其形象并且至关重要的，因为它可以透露个人的身份，也可以将个人与公众或公共的身份联系起来或使之分离。在特定的时间或地点讲某种语言可能是危险的，甚至是致命的，这种情况过去发生过，现在也存在。或者某人讲同一种语言，有时可以透露个人身份，有时却（故意）隐瞒。这种情况在法国如此，在英国更是一点儿不假。在这片湿气袭人的小岛上，英式口音的影响及统治范围使英国仅与带有英国口音的英国人和谐共存，却不适合其他人在此生活。在英国开口说英语（比如黑人英语）相当于把你的全部都公之于众，包括你的父母、青年时期、所受的教育、薪水、自尊心。天啊，甚至你的未来都被一览无余。
2) 想侮辱一个女人吗？那就赞美她吧。新研究发现，只有半数女性受到赞美会感到高兴，其他许多女性会将好意的赞美误解成冒犯。
“你看起来不错”是男人能对女人说的最糟的话之一，因为女人会认为这句话的意思是她看起来很胖。其他会弄巧成拙的赞美还包括告诉一个女人你喜欢她化的妆，或者她的裙子很紧身。调查还显示，说一个女人“有曲线”或者说她长得像她母亲或父亲也是绝对的禁忌，这一点会得到丈夫们的响应，他们在很久以前就确定赞美老婆是件不值得做的麻烦事。一家保健公司开展的新调查揭示了这一社交雷区，该调查访问了2000多名男性和女性。调查发现，许多女性将赞美视为“含沙射影的讥

讽”，而且很可能会以牙还牙。

赞美一个女人最好的方法是夸她成功瘦身，说她看起来比往常瘦了。约43%的被调查者说这是最好的赞美。还有十分之四的女性在别人夸她们笑靥如花时最开心。称赞一个女人身上散发的香气好闻、夸她的头发美丽，或者夸她的眼睛漂亮也不容易被误解。

但是男人应避免谈论一个女人看起来气色如何，因为女人会以为他指的是她很胖。其他表面恭维实则挖苦的话还有“你不像你看起来那么愚蠢”，或者“你看起来不像我预料的那么糟”。女人还讨厌任何人说她们的五官大，特别反感别人说她们强壮或魁梧。超过十分之一的女性会误解人们对她们妆容的称赞，以为是自己妆化得太浓了。

星期四

英译汉的技巧（三） 名词性从句、定语从句 译法

一、名词性从句的译法

英语名词从句包括主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句等。翻译这类从句时，大多数可按原文的句序译成对应的汉语，但也还有一些其他处理方法。现在我们来逐一学习一下。

（一）主语从句

1. 以 what, whatever, whoever 等代词引导的主语从句翻译时一般可按原文顺序翻译。

What he told me was only half-truth.

他告诉我的只是些半真半假的东西而已。

Whatever he saw and heard on his trip gave him a very deep impression.

他此行所见所闻都给他留下了深刻的印象。

Whoever has made a voyage up the Hudson must remember the Kaatskill Mountains.

凡是在哈得孙河上游航行过的人是一定记得卡兹吉尔群山的。

2. 以 it 做形式主语所引起的真实主语从句，翻译时视情况可以提前，也可以不提前。

（1）真实主语从句提前译，为了强调起见，it 一般可以译出来；如果不需要强调，it 也可以不译出来。

It doesn't make much difference whether he attends the meeting or not.

他参加不参加会议没有多大关系。

It seemed inconceivable that the pilot could have survived the crash.

驾驶员在飞机坠毁之后，竟然还能活着，这看来是难以想象的。

（2）真实主语从句不提前，it 一般不需要译出来。

It is strange that she should have failed to see her own shortcomings.

真奇怪，她竟然没看出自己的缺点。

It was obvious that I had become the pawn in some sort of top-level power play.

很清楚，某些高级人物在玩弄权术，而我却成了他们的工具。

It is rumoured (reported) that the meeting will be held in June.

据传（报），这个会将在六月间举行。

（二）宾语从句

1. 用 that, what, how 等引起的宾语从句翻译为中文的时候，一般不需要改变它在原句

中的顺序。

I told him that because of the last condition, I'd have to turn it down.

我告诉他，由于那最后一个条件，我只得谢绝。

He gave a description of what he had seen.

他描述了他所见到的一切。

I also told him how appealing I found the offer.

我也告诉他，这提供的机会对我有多么大的吸引力。

有时可加“说”字，再接下去翻译原文宾语从句的内容。

Smith replied that the film was infinitely better than his last one.

史密斯回答说，这部电影不知比上一部胜过多少倍。

He would remind people again that it was decided not only by himself but by himself but by lots of others.

他再三提醒大家说，决定这件事的不只是他一个人，还有其他许多人。

2. 用 it 做形式宾语的句子，译成汉语的时候 that 引起的宾语从句一般可按原文顺序；it 不译。

I made it clear to them that they must hand in their papers before 10 o'clock in the morning.

我向他们讲清楚了，他们必须在上午十点前交论文。

I take it for granted that you will come and talk the matter over with him.

我理所当然地认为你会来跟他谈这件事情的。

但有时在译文中，也可将 that 引起的宾语从句提前。

I regard it as an honour that I am chosen to attend the meeting.

我被选参加会议，感到光荣。

Anyhow, I owe it to you that I'm here.

不管怎么说，我现在还能在这儿，全靠你。

(三) 表语从句

英语中，表语从句的翻译和宾语从句一样，一般可按原文顺序翻译。

The result of invention of steam engine was that human power was replaced by mechanical power.

蒸汽机发明的结果是机械力代替了人力。

The advantage of rolling bearing is that they cause less friction.

滚动轴承的优点是它产生的摩擦力较小。

在 that (this) is why ... 句型中，如果选择先译主句，后译从句，可以译成“这就是为什么……，这就是为什么……的原因，这就是……的缘故”等。如果选择先译从句，再译主句，一般可以译为“……原因就在这里，……理由就在这里”等。如：

That is why heat can melt ice, vaporize water and cause bodies to expand.

就是为什么热能使冰融化、使水蒸发、使物体膨胀的原因。

That is why practice is the criterion of truth and why the standard of practice should be first and fundamental in the theory of knowledge.

所谓实践是真理的标准，所谓实践的标准应该是认识论首位的和基本的观点，理由就在这个地方。(原句表语很长，所以此处采用了紧缩原则。)

在 this (it) is because ... 句型中，一般先译主句，再译从句，译成“是因为……，这是

因为……的缘故，这是由于……的缘故”。

This is because the direct current flows in a wire always in one direction.

这是由于直流电在导线中总沿着一个方向流动的缘故。

It is because a conductor carrying is surrounded by a magnetic field.

这是因为载流导体周围有磁场。

在 this is what ... 句型中，如果先译主句，后译从句，通常译为“这就是……的内容，这就是……的含义”等。如果先译从句，后译主句，通常译为“……就是这个道理，……就是这个意思”等。如：

This is what we have discussed in this article.

这就是我们在本文中所讨论的内容。（如表语不长，则可译成“这就是……的内容”等。）

（四）同位语从句

同位语从句主要用来对名词作进一步的解释，说明名词的具体内容。能接同位语从句的名词主要有：belief（相信），fact（事实），hope（希望），idea（想法，观点），doubt（怀疑），news（新闻，消息），rumor（传闻），conclusion（结论），evidence（证据），suggestion（建议），problem（问题），order（命令），answer（回答），decision（决定），discovery（发现），explanation（解释），information（消息），knowledge（知识），law（法律），opinion（意见，观点），truth（真理，事实），promise（承诺），report（报告），thought（思想），statement（声明），rule（规定），possibility（可能）等。

一般来说，同位语从句可以直接翻译在主句后面。

He expressed the hope that he would come over to visit China again.

他表示希望再到中国来访问。

Being interested in the relationship of language and thought, Whorf developed the idea that the structure of language determines the structure of habitual thought in a society.

沃尔夫对语言与思维的关系很感兴趣，逐渐形成了这样的观点，即在一个社会中，语言的结构决定着习惯思维的结构。

有时候在翻译同位语从句时，可以将其放在所修饰的名词前面，相当于前置的修饰语，但不一定使用定语的标志词“的”。这种情况下，同位语从句都比较简单。

We know the fact that bodies possess weight.

我们都知道物体具有重量这一事实。

The rumor that he was arrested was unfounded.

关于他被捕的传闻是没有根据的。

增加“即”（或者“以为”）这样的词来连接，或用冒号、破折号直接分开主句和同位语从句。

But this does not in any way alter the fact that they are now, from a practical point of view, irrational.

但这却丝毫改变不了这样一个事实，即从实用的观点来看，他们今天仍是不合理的。

We have reached the conclusion that practice is the criterion for testing truth.

我们已经得出这样的结论：实践是检验真理的标准。

Not long ago, the scientists made an exciting discovery that this waste material could be turned into plastics.

不久前，科学家们有了一个令人振奋的发现——可以把这种废物变成塑料。

二、定语从句的译法

英语定语从句的译法主要涉及限定性定语从句的译法和非限定性定语从句的译法。

(一) 前置译法

限定性定语从句往往要译成“……的”前置定语结构，若分开译往往会影主句意思的完整。也有一些非限定性定语从句，或因结构较短，或因与被修饰词关系较为密切，或因拆译后将会造成译文结构松散，也可译成前置定语结构。

The prime of day when you feel most energetic is when your cycle of body temperature is at its peak.

一个人一天内感觉精力最充沛的时刻是他的体温循环周期处在巅峰时。

My mother's laugh, which was very infectious, broke the silence.

我妈妈富有感染力的笑声打破了沉寂。

(二) 后置译法

该译法在翻译非限制性定语从句时使用普遍。此外，有些限制性定语从句结构相对复杂，译成前置定语显得太长，而且不符合汉语表达习惯，则应译成后置的并列分句，作进一步的连贯叙述。

1. 重复英语关系代词所代表的含义，必要时还需加一些代词或连词。

I told the interesting story to Susan, who told it to her sister.

我把那个有趣的故事告诉了苏珊，苏珊又告诉了她姐姐。

"In short," a leader of the new school contends, "the scientific revolution, as we call it, was largely the improvement and invention and use of a series of instruments that expanded the reach of science in innumerable directions."

新学派的一位领袖坚持说：“简言之，我们所谓的科学革命，主要是指一系列器具的改进、发明和使用，而这些改进、发明和使用使科学发展的范围无所不及。”

2. 省略英语关系代词所代表的含义，必要时加某些代词或连词。

It is he who received the telegram that announced the death of your aunt.

是他接到那封电报，说你姑妈去世了。

She was very patient with the children, which her husband seldom was.

她对孩子很有耐心，而她丈夫却很少这样。

3. 关系代词 which 转译成汉语人称代词或指示代词。

We have seen many chemical changes, from which physical changes are quite different.

我们见过很多化学变化，它们与物理变化截然不同。

The food supply will not increase nearly enough to match this, which means that we are heading into a crisis: in the matter of producing and marketing food.

食品供应的增长将远远赶不上人口的增长，这就意味着，我们在粮食生产和购销方面正陷入危机。

(三) 合成译法

该译法是将被修饰词/先行词与定语从句合在一起译成一个独立的汉语句子的翻译方法，如 there be 结构。如果主语压缩成汉语词组后用做其他句子成分，那么定语从句可译为

一个句子。

There are some metals which are lighter than water.

有些金属比水轻。

There is a sense in which morality and expedience need not conflict.

从某种意义上说，道义和权宜之计不一定冲突。

(四) 译为状语从句

有些定语从句形式上是定语，但在意义上与主句有逻辑状语关系，说明主句的原因、结果、目的、条件、让步等关系，翻译时应按其语法功能，译成各种相应的汉语复句。

There is no bad habit that may not be cured by a strong willpower.

只要有坚强的意志，就没有什么坏习惯不能改掉。

The newswoman wishes to write an article that will attract public attention to that shipwreck.

女记者想写篇文章，以便能够引起公众对那起沉船事件的关注。

She took Chinese medicine which relieved her symptoms.

她服了中药，结果缓解了症状。

For instance, a capable corporate manager might see an alarming rise in local housing prices that could affect the availability of skilled workers in the region.

比如，精干的企业经理会把当地的房价上涨看做是一种危险信号，因为房价上涨可能会对能否在当地招到熟练工人产生影响。

特别需要指出的是，翻译定语从句时，务必要搞清楚定语从句所修饰的先行词到底是哪一个，离它最近的名词未必一定就是定语从句所修饰的对象。要根据定语从句与先行词关系的密切程度、自身的长度和含义而采取不同的翻译方法。

每日训练

1. 请翻译下列名词从句，注意括号中的要求。

- 1) What has happened is no surprise to us. We all know well enough what he is. (译文从句位置不变)
- 2) It was natural that now the conversation turned to the tragic events that had taken place there a month before. (真实主语提前)
- 3) It was clear that he was going to meet Miss Carr and wanted to be alone. (真实主语不提前)
- 4) A principle of science tells what usually happens under certain conditions. (译文从句位置不变)
- 5) I wanted to make it clear whether he was a foreigner or not. (it 省略不译)
- 6) She had explained that interviews were the only way to keep the case in public consciousness. (加“说”字)
- 7) The fact is that the old lady believed Rebecca to be the meekest creature in the world. (译文从句位置不变)

2. 请翻译下列定语从句，注意括号中的要求。

- 1) Those who sacrifice themselves for the people's cause are the real heroes of history. (前置法)

- 2) He made the sound of sympathy which comes so readily from those who have an independent income. (重复先行词、后置法)
- 3) A fuel is a material which will burn at a reasonable temperature and produce heat. (省略先行词、后置法)
- 4) There are some metals which possess the power to conduct electricity. (合成译法)
- 5) The ambassador, who had long been interested in Asian affairs, was flattered. (前置法)
- 6) I knew that John would tell his mother, who would probably tell Mary. (后置法)
- 7) Nevertheless the problem was solved successfully, which showed that the computations were accurate. (译文从句独立)
- 8) But he did not talk at length about the matter, which was not considered by the White House to be a particularly important question. (因果关系)
- 9) He insisted on buying another coat, which he had no use for. (让步关系)
- 10) Anyone who thinks that rational knowledge need not be derived from perceptual knowledge is an idealist. (条件关系)

3. 综合练习

- 1) Optimism and pessimism are both powerful forces, and each of us must choose which we want to shape our outlook and our expectations. There is enough good and bad in everyone's life—ample sorrow and happiness, sufficient joy and pain—to find a rational basis for either optimism or pessimism. We can choose to laugh or cry, bless or curse. It's our decision. From which perspective do we want to view life? Will we look up in hope or down in despair? I believe in the upward look. I choose to highlight the positive and slip right over the negative. I am an optimist by choice as much as by nature.
- 2) All men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with inherent and unalienable rights, that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness; that to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed, that whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new government ...
- 3) Picture-taking is a technique both for annexing the objective world and for expressing the singular self. Photographs depict objective realities that already exist, though only the camera can disclose them. And they depict an individual photographer's temperament, discovering itself through the camera's cropping of reality. That is, photography has two antithetical ideals: in the first, photography is about the world and the photographer is a mere observer who counts for little; but in the second, photography is the instrument of intrepid, questing subjectivity and the photographer is all.
- 4) It seems as if a great deal were attainable in a world where there are so many marriages and decisive battles, and where we all, at certain hours of the day, and with great gusto and despatch, stow a portion of victuals finally and irretrievably into the bag which contains us. And it would seem also, on a hasty view, that the attainment of as much as possible was the one goal of man's contentious life. And

yet, as regards the spirit, this is but a semblance.

参考译文

1. 1) 所发生的事对我们说来并不奇怪。他为人如何我们是够清楚的。
2) 现在把话题转移到一个月以前在那里发生的惨案上, 这是很自然的事。
3) 很清楚, 他是去看卡尔小姐了, 所以要一个人去。
4) 科学原理告诉我们在一定条件下所会发生的事情。
5) 我要弄清楚他是不是外国人。
6) 她曾解释道, 接见记者是使公众不至忘却这桩案件的唯一办法。
7) 事实是, 老太太以为丽贝卡是天下最驯良的小家伙。
2. 1) 为人民事业牺牲自己的人历史上真正的英雄。
2) 他发出了同情之声, 这种同情声是那些有独立收入的人最容易脱口而出的。
3) 燃料是一种物质, 在适当温度下能够燃烧并释放热量。
4) 某些金属具有导电的能力。
5) 早就对亚洲事务感兴趣的那个大使, 不禁受宠若惊。
6) 我知道约翰准会去告诉他的妈妈, 他妈妈多半又会说给玛丽听。
7) 不过问题还是圆满地解决了。这说明计算很准确。
8) 但他没有详细地谈这件事, 因为白宫没有把这件事看做是一个特别重要的问题。
9) 他坚持要再买一件上衣, 虽然他并不用得着。
10) 如果谁以为理性认识可以不从感性认识得来, 他就是一个唯心论者。
3. 1) 乐观和悲观都是强大的力量, 我们每个人都必须在这两者之间作出选择, 从而给我们对未来的愿望和预期染上或明或暗的色彩。每个人一生中的幸运与不幸(数不清的哀伤和喜悦、欢欣与痛苦)足以成为我们乐观和悲观的理由。我们可以选择哭或者笑, 祝福或者诅咒。我们用怎样的眼光看待生活? 是昂首寻找希望抑或是垂头在绝望中逡巡? 全由我们自己来决定。我喜欢积极向上的态度。我愿意把注意力集中在生活光明的一面, 而忽略那些阴暗的角落。天性和个人选择使我成了一个乐观主义者。
2) 人人生而平等, 造物者赋予他们若干不可剥夺的权利, 其中包括生命权、自由权和追求幸福的权利。为了保障这些权利, 人类才在他们之间建立政府, 而政府之正当权力, 是经被治理者的同意而产生的。当任何形式的政府对这些目标有破坏作用时, 人民便有权利去改变或废除它, 以建立一个新的政府。
3) 照相是一种既兼并客观世界, 又表达独特自我的技术。照片描绘业已存在的客观现实, 不过只有照相机才能揭示这种客观现实。照片反映个别摄影者的气质, 这种气质是通过照相机剪裁现实而显示出来的。那就是说, 摄影术有两个相互对立的观念: 第一, 摄影术是反映世界的, 摄影者只不过是无足轻重的观察者; 第二, 摄影术是无畏探索的主观性的手段, 摄影者决定一切。
4) 在这充满联姻婚嫁、决战厮杀的世界里, 在每天特定的时刻, 我们都欣然而又迅速地把一份食物一去不返地吞进包裹着我们的皮囊。这个世界看上去似乎有很多东西都是可以得到的。猛然看来, 尽可能地获取也成为纷繁人生的唯一目标。然而, 对于精神世界来说, 这只不过是表面现象。

星期五

英译汉的技巧（四） 状语从句的译法

英语中的状语从句有九大类，分别表示：时间、地点、原因、结果、条件、让步、目的、比较、方式。其中，考博英语中比较有难度的是表示时间、原因、条件、结果、让步、目的六种状语从句。下面我们通过一些实例说明它们常用的翻译方法。

（一）时间状语从句的译法

时间状语从句常用的连接词有：when, while, since, before, after, as, till, until, as soon as 等。时间状语从句有三种常用的翻译方法：

1. 按时间状语的原意翻译

While higher fuel prices hurt everyone, the poor are hurt disproportionately
更高的油价伤害到每一个人的时候，穷人被伤害的程度是不成比例的。

When anything goes wrong with the machine, turn off the switch.

如果机器出故障，就把开关关掉。

以上两例译文中表示时间的状语置于句首，与原文一致。

Grasslands need time to rest when cattle and other animals feed on them.

牛和其他牲畜吃草的同时，草场也需要时间来休养生息。

上句原文中表示时间的从句后置，而在译文中前置。

2. 译成“一……就……”的句式，放在汉语译文的句前

As the sun rose, the fog dispersed.

太阳一升起，雾就散了。

He had hardly rushed into the room when he shouted, "Fire! Fire!"

他刚跑进屋里就大声喊：“着火了！着火了！”

Hardly had the fishing vessels entered the harbour when the storm came.

那些渔船刚刚进港，那场风暴就到来了。

He had scarcely handed me the letter when he asked me to read it.

他把信一交给我，就叫我念给他听。

3. 译成并列的分句

The army was disbanded when the war came to an end.

战争结束时，军队就被解散。

They set him free when his ransom had not yet been paid.

他还没有交赎金，他们就把他释放了。

在以上两个句子的原文里，表示时间的从句后置，在译文中提前。

Neil wasn't at home when Melba was ironed out.

梅尔巴被杀害的时候，尼尔并不在家。

Mrs. Acland gazed at him, her eyes darkening with a curious expression of dislike and distrust as he silently turned away.

阿克莱太太死瞪着他，眼神越来越阴沉，显出一种对他既厌恶又怀疑的难以形容的表情，这时他只好默不作声地把脸转了过去。

在最后两个例子的原文里，表时间的从句后置，在译文中不提前。

（二）原因状语从句的译法

原因状语从句常用的连接词有：because, so, for, as, since 等。

1. 译成表示“原因”的分句

（1）“原因”在“结果”之前

The crops failed because the season was dry.

因为气候干旱，作物歉收。

It doesn't boil, despite temperatures reaching up to 400 °C, for it is under terrific pressure.

尽管温度高达 400 摄氏度，水却因为处于高压之下而不会沸腾。

He says computer manufacturers used to be more worried about electromagnetic interference, so they often put blocks of material inside to absorb stray signals.

他说过去的计算机生产商往往更担心电磁干扰，所以他们常常内置一层材料来吸收杂散信号。

（2）“结果”在“原因”之前

London taxis are easy to park because they turn on a sixpence.

伦敦的出租车很容易停车，因为它们兜的范围很小。

2. 出现 since 时，译成“既然……”，通常放在句首

Since he can't win the race, he may as well quit.

既然他不能赢得比赛，倒不如退出。

3. 译成无关联词的因果关系并列分句

The sea was choppy today because of the windstorm.

今天起了风暴，海上波涛汹涌。

（三）条件状语从句的译法

引导条件状语从句的词组有 if, providing, provided, unless, as long as, suppose 等，可相应译成表示条件或表示假设的分句，例如翻译成：如果、要是、既然、只要，等。

1. 译成表示“条件”的分句

So long as you work hard enough, an iron rod can be ground into a needle.

只要工夫深，铁杵磨成针。

She will burn herself out unless she gets more sleep.

要是她得不到更多的睡眠，她的身体就要垮了。

Once the men had been accepted by the Comet organization, they were brought to Brussels.

一旦他们被彗星组织接收了，就会被带到布鲁塞尔去。

“只要”、“要是”、“如果”、“一旦”等都是汉语表示“条件”的常用关联词，在语气上，“只要”（只有）最强，“如果”最弱。另外“如果”也用来表示假设。

2. 译成表示“假设”的分句

If the negotiations between the rich northern nations and the poor southern nations make headway, it is intended that a ministerial session in December should be arranged.

要是北方富国和南方穷国之间的谈判获得进展的话，就打算在12月份安排召开部长级会议。

Provided that circumstances permit, we shall hold the meeting next week.

只要情况允许，我们下周将举行会议。

3. 译成补充说明情况的分句

The amount of deformation is directly proportional to the applied stress provided the force does not exceed a certain limit.

如果外力不超过某限度的话，那么形变量与外力成正比。

You can drive tonight if you are ready.

你今晚就可以出车，如果你愿意的话。

（四）结果状语从句的译法

结果状语从句主要由 so that, so ... that ... (so 修饰其后面的形容词或形容词词组), such ... that ... (such 修饰其后面的名词或名词词组) 引导，且从句一般都放在主句之后。

So many people came to the concert that some couldn't get in.

来听音乐会的人太多了，以至于有些人没法进来。

He's such a good swimmer that he makes me look sick.

他游得这么好，真叫我相形见绌。

The room was so hot that she felt dizzy.

房间里如此之热，以至于她觉得头晕目眩。

It's such a good chance that we mustn't miss it.

机会这样好，我们可不能失掉。

Electricity is such a part of our everyday lives and so much taken for granted nowadays that we rarely think twice when we switch on the light or turn on the radio.

电在我们的日常生活中所占的地位是如此重要，而且现在人们认为电是理所当然的事，所以我们在开电灯或开收音机时，就很少再去想一想电是怎么来的。

In his fury he threw the stone tablets upon the ground so that they were broken.

他大怒之下，便把那些石匾扔到地上，摔破了。

（五）让步状语从句的译法

让步状语从句常见的引导词有：though, although, even though, even if, while, whether, whatever (引导让步状语从句时，可以用 no matter what 代替), apart from 等，译成“虽然……但是……，尽管……”等。此时，主句前不可用 but，但可以用 yet / still。

The poster wouldn't stick even though I drenched it with glue.

我涂了大量胶水，可那张海报就是贴不住。

Although television was developed for broadcasting, many important uses have been found that have nothing to do with it.

虽然电视是为了广播而发明的，但是电视还有许多与广播无关的重要用途。

Whether the characters portrayed are taken from real life or are purely imaginary, they may become our companions and friends.

无论书中描述的角色来自真实生活还是来自纯粹的想象，他们都可能成为我们的伙伴和朋友。

By many such experiments Galileo showed that, apart from differences caused by air resistance, all bodies fall to the ground at the same speed, whatever their weight is.

伽利略经过多次这类实验证明，一切物体，不论其重量如何，除了因空气阻力引起的差别外，都是以同样的速度落向地面的。

We shall defend our city, whatever the cost may be.

不管代价如何，我们都要捍卫我们的城市。

Wherever there is injustice, we try to help.

凡有不公正的地方，我们都竭力相助匡正。

While there are almost as many definitions of history as there are historians, modern practice most closely conforms to one that sees history as the attempt to recreate and explain the significant events of the past.

几乎每个历史学家对史学都有自己的界定，但现代史学家的实践最趋向于认为历史学是试图重现过去的重大史实并对其作出解释。

Though he trained hard all year, (yet / still) he failed to reach his best form.

尽管他全年艰苦训练，然而仍未达到自己的最佳状态。

(六) 目的状语从句的译法

目的状语从句常用的连词有：so that, in order that 或 that。从句中常含有情态动词 may, might, will, would, can, could, will, would 等。

1. “目的”前置：目的状语从句在译成“为了……”时，多位于主句之前。

A film can slow down the formation of crystals so that students can study the process.

为了能让学生研究这一过程，电影可以放慢演示晶体的形成过程。

They stepped into a helicopter and flew high in the sky in order that they might have a bird's eye view of the city.

为了对这个城市作一鸟瞰，他们跨进直升机，凌空飞行。

2. “目的”后置：在译成“以便……”、“省（免）得……”、“以免”时，多位于主句之后。

The murderer ran away as fast as he could so that he might not be caught.

凶手尽快地跑开，以免被抓住。

Each tool should be pouched so that it can be readily reached.

每把刀具应摆好，以便能很快地拿到手。

The cameraman must have knowledge of composition so that the arrangement of the people and objects in each shot will produce the desired effect.

摄影师必须具备合成的知识，以便安排好每个镜头中的人和物来达到预期的效果。

另外提醒考生，在进行英译汉时，要尽量避免机械地照搬连接词的汉语对应词或意思，在准确理解主句和从句间的逻辑关系后，进行相应的句型转换，例如可将英语的时间状语从句译为汉语的并列句或条件句，地点状语从句译为汉语的条件句等。

比如：

How can you expect your children to be honest when you yourself tell lies?

如果你自己都撒谎，怎么能期望你的孩子说真话呢？

上句中 when 引导的状语从句翻译成汉语时改成了由“如果”引导的状语从句。较之“当你自己都撒谎，怎么能期望你的孩子说真话呢？”更为通顺。

In general, the tests work most efficiently when all equipment is under perfect control.

一般来说，如果所有仪器都完全在掌控中，测试就会最有效。

上句中 when 引导的从句并不是很强烈的时间概念，实际上说的是一种条件。这种情况下，不妨将它译成“如果”。

Where there is sound, there must be sound waves. (地点状语从句)

如果有声音，就一定有声波。(条件状语从句)

The days were short, for it was now December.

现在是12月份，白天短了。

本句表示原因的状语从句(for ...)并没有用“因为”的连接词。很多原文中用连接词的状语从句在中文中可以省略连接词。

However, the world is so made that elegant systems are in principle unable to deal with some of the world's more fascinating and delightful aspects.

然而，世界就是如此，完美的体系一般是无法解决世上某些更引人入胜的课题的。

句中 so ... that ... 引导的结果从句，如果用“如此……以至于……”来译，译文便为：“但是，世界就是如此被制造的，以至于……”，明显是从英语搬过来的，属“死译”。

在翻译状语从句时，我们一定要在忠实原文的基础上，结合其所在的语境，灵活处理，使之符合汉语的表达习惯，达到忠实和通顺的最佳结合。

每日训练

1. 状语从句翻译练习

- 1) When the war started, she soon got caught up in some very different activities.
- 2) They were just about to give up the question, when suddenly they found the answer.
- 3) As she had lots of time, she decided to go to the Embankment first.
- 4) Smith fell down when he ran fast to meet them.
- 5) They support the holding of a summit conference no matter whether this sort of conference will make achievement or not.
- 6) She had always taken that for granted as correct behavior, however much it went against the things you were told.
- 7) We'll let you use the room on condition that you will keep it clean and tidy.
- 8) Though the squatters refused to come out, they were besieged from that moment.
- 9) Probably he had stood there for some time, because the ash of his cigar was discovered on the ground near the gate.
- 10) In plucking wild flowers, he always refrained from taking many from one locality, lest he should injure the future growth.

2. 综合练习

- 1) Until now, small stars known as faint red dwarfs were considered ideal candidates for the so-called “dark matter” that is believed to account for more than 90 percent

of the mass of the universe.

All visible celestial objects, such as planets, stars and galaxies, are believed to account for only 10 percent of the mass of the universe. The rest of the “missing mass” is presumably invisible because it does not emit or reflect light, or the light is too feeble to be detected. But dark matter can be indirectly detected due to its gravitational influence on other visible objects.

...

The ultimate fate of the universe will be determined by the amount of dark matter present. If there is not enough dark matter to bind the universe together gravitationally, it could continue expanding forever. If there is enough mass to hold the universe together gravitationally, the universe may slow down its expansion, come to a halt and begin to contract and eventually collapse.

- 2) It does this year in Southern California; at least that's what they told me last year when I marveled at the relentless determination of the rain. There seem to be two reasons here. During the rainy season, sometimes the storms drench the area nonstop for days. Sometimes the storms come and go. Often property damage and disrupted lives result. It's hard to predict the intensity of the patterns from year to year. Then there is the fire reason. That takes care of the property that managed to survive the deluge, again disrupting lives. The days connecting these seasons are monotonous, with some sun, some smog and some more sun. This is nothing like back home in Colorado.
- 3) Almost all our major problems involve human behavior, and they cannot be solved by physical and biological technology alone. What is needed is a technology of behavior, but we have been slow to develop the science from which such a technology might be drawn. One difficulty is that almost all of what is called behavioral science continues to trace behavior to states of mind, feelings, human nature, and so on. Physics and biology once followed similar practices and advanced only when they discarded them. The behavioral sciences have been slow to change partly because the explanatory items often seem to be directly observed and partly because other kinds of explanations have been hard to find.

参考译文

1. 1) 战争一爆发, 她很快就卷进了一些迥然不同的活动中。
- 2) 他们正打算搁下这个问题, 这时他们突然找到了答案。
- 3) 时间还早, 她决定先到河岸大道去一下。
- 4) 当史密斯跑得很快去会见他们时, 他摔倒了。
- 5) 他们支持召开首脑会议, 不管这种会议有无成果。
- 6) 她总认为这是一种正当的行为, 不管你所听到的是怎样的不同。
- 7) 如果你们能保持整洁的话, 我们可以让你们用这个房间。
- 8) 尽管这些占据者拒绝出去, 可是从那一刻起, 他们就被围困在里面了。
- 9) 他可能曾在那里站过一会儿, 因为门口地上发现了他的雪茄烟灰。
- 10) 采摘野花时, 他总是不在一处采集很多, 免得危害它们今后的生长。

2. 1) 直到现在,微小的红矮星仍是最被看好的暗物质候选者,“暗物质”被认为代表了宇宙中90%以上的物质构成。

所有可见的天体,如行星、恒星和银河系仅仅占到了宇宙物质总量的10%。余下的“消失了”的物质不是因为不能发光或反光,就是因为光太暗而无法直接观测得到。但是通过它自身的重力对其他可见物体的影响,科学家们可以间接地探测到它的存在。

.....

“暗物质”的量关乎宇宙的最终命运。如果没有足够的“暗物质”用引力来限制宇宙的膨胀,那它就会永远扩张下去。如果有足够的“暗物质”用引力来控制住宇宙,那么它的膨胀就会减慢,继而停止膨胀而逐渐开始收缩,最终被摧毁。

- 2) 今年加利福尼亚州南部就是这样。至少去年当我对大雨无情的果断感到无比惊讶的时候,他们是这样告诉我的。造成这种现象有两种原因:首先,在雨季的时候,有时暴风雨几天连续不断地湿透这一带,有时暴风雨又来去不定。这样经常会造成财产损失和生活混乱。其次,是大火的原因。大火毁坏了在暴雨中幸存的财物,再次扰乱了人们的生活。连接这些季节的日子是单调的,只有一些阳光、烟雾和更多一些阳光。这和回到科罗拉多州的家完全不同。
- 3) 几乎我们所有的主要问题都牵扯人类行动,且这些行为不是仅靠物理技术和生物技术就可以解决。解决这些问题需要的是一种行为技术,但我们在发展这门技术相关的科学上却很慢。其中一个困难是几乎所有称为行为科学的都将行为追溯到思想状态、感觉、人类本质等等。之前物理学生物学也跟行为科学一样都有类似的经历,只有在丢弃了这一困难后才能得以发展。行为科学发展缓慢,部分原因是要解释的事情有时似乎可直接观察,还有一部分原因就是很难发现其他种解释。

星期六

英译汉的技巧（五） 被动语态、长句的译法

一、被动语态的翻译

被动语态在英语中使用非常广泛。凡是在没必要、不愿意说出或不清楚施动者是谁的情况下使用英语被动语态，是科普类论说文的一大特点。翻译时，某些可以直接译为汉语的被动语态，但多数情况下，需译为主动语态，有时还要补上主语。主要译法如下：

1 译成汉语被动句并保留原文主语

借助汉语中用来表达被动意义的词，例如，“被、叫、让、由、遭、受、得、为……所、是……的、可以用、加以”等。例如：

The region was visited by the worst drought in twenty years.

该地区遭受了 20 年以来最严重的干旱。

In addition, not all technology is based on science.

另外，并不是所有的技术都是以科学为基础的。

By contrast intelligence is possibly easier to quantify and like genius is a polygenic character that can be molded by the environment.

相对而言，智力也许比较容易量化，而且，它像天赋一样，具有一种易受环境影响的多基因特征。

Many of the best-known techniques for foresight were developed by government planners, especially in the military, “thinking about the unthinkable.”

许多最知名的远见训练技巧是由政府设计人员，特别是其军事部门的策划人员开发出来的，“思考那些难以想象的事情”。

2 译成有主语的汉语主动句

如果被动句没有动作的发出者，而且表示观点和态度时，可将原文的主语译成宾语，增译“人们、有人、大家、我们”等泛指性主语。例如：

He was considered quite qualified for the job.

大家都认为他胜任这项工作。

Television, it is often said, keeps one informed about current events, allows to follow the latest developments in science and politics, and offers an endless series of programmes which are both instructive and entertaining.

人们常说，电视使人了解时事、熟悉科学和政治领域的最新发展变化，并能源源不断地为观众提供各种既有教育意义又有趣的节目。

3 译成无主语的汉语主动句

英语是主语突出型语言，而汉语是主题突出型语言，因而很多英语被动结构可直接译成汉语无主语句。例如：

Brief reference should be made here to the law of universal gravitation.

这里应该简单提一下万有引力定律。

If some races or social groups in the human population can be shown to be inferior in intelligence, it opens up the possibility that some segregationists or politicians could bring in legislation or policies to suppress or even eliminate such races or groups in the population.

如果能够证明人类中某些种族或社会群体在智力上是劣等的，就会使某些种族隔离主义者或政客有可能去制定法律或政策来压迫甚至消灭这些种族和群体，使他们从人类中消失。

4 译成隐含被动意义的汉语主动句

有些被动结构不译出，也不会引起歧义。例如：

On the contrary, both their knowledge and experience are enriched.

相反，他们的知识和经验更丰富了。

Shelley's poems have been translated into many foreign languages.

雪莱的诗歌已经译成了很多外国文字。

5 It + 被动语态 + that 从句的译法

这种译法相对固定，有的译为无主句，有的添加泛指主语。建议考生多加背诵，对写作也大有裨益。

It is well-known that ... 众所周知……

It is reported that ... 据报道……

It is learned/said that ... 据闻……，据说……

It is noticed that ... 人们注意到……

It is claimed/asserted that ... 有人主张……

It is demonstrated that ... 据证实……，已经证明……

It is stressed that ... 有人强调说……

It is assumed that ... 假设……

It is presumed that ... 据推断……

It is supposed that ... 人们推测……，人们猜测……

It is enumerated that ... 有人列举出了……

It is rumored that ... 听说……，谣传……

It was told that ... 有人说，据说……

It was noted above that ... 前面已经指出……

It is generally considered that ... 人们认为……，一般人认为……

It is universally accepted/acknowledged that ... 人们普遍认为……

It is unanimously agreed that ... 大家一致同意……

It may be said without fear of exaggeration that ... 可以毫不夸张地说……

It must be admitted that ... 必须承认……, 老实说……

It must be pointed out that ... 应该指出 (的是) ……

It should be realized that ... 我们应该认识到……

It cannot be denied that ... 不可否认的是……

It has been proved that ... 非已经证明……

It has been found that ... 人们发现……

特别需要指出的是, 被动语态往往并不单独出现, 考生必须灵活运用以上技巧, 从而选取最佳方案。例如:

On the whole such a conclusion can be drawn with a certain degree of confidence, but only if the children be assumed to have had the same attitude towards the test as the other with whom he is being compared, and only if he was not punished by lack of relevant information which they possessed.

总的来说, 得出这种结论是有一定把握的, 但必须具备两个条件: 能够假定这个孩子对测试的态度和与他比较的另一个孩子的态度相同; 他也没有因为缺乏别的孩子已掌握的有关知识而被扣分。

本句共出现了4个被动结构, 但翻译中, 除了最后的 was not punished by 译成被动句外, 其余3个都按汉语习惯译成了主动语态。认真思考一下本题, 你或许会对被动语态的翻译技巧有更深一些的理解。

二、长句的翻译

翻译长句时, 首先要弄清楚原文的句法结构, 找出整个句子的中心内容及其各层意思, 然后分析几层意思之间的相互逻辑关系 (因果、时间顺序等), 再按照汉语特点和表达方式, 准确地译出原文的意思, 不拘泥于原文的形式。

(一) 长句翻译的步骤

- 紧缩主干 (找出主句主语、谓语及宾语)
- 区分主从 (析出从句并找出从句的主语、谓语及宾语以及修饰关系)
- 辨析词义 (特别是主干中的词义)
- 分清层次 (推断句子思维逻辑发展形式及重心)
- 调整搭配 (特别是主谓及动宾搭配, 调整语序)
- 润饰词语 (选词、炼句并考虑文体的适应性)

(二) 长句的翻译方法

英语长句的翻译方法有以下几种: 顺译法、分译法、倒置法、拆离法、插入法。

1. 顺译法

有些长句所叙述的一连串动作基本上是按动作发生的时间先后顺序安排, 或有些长句原文各句的逻辑关系、表达顺序与汉语完全一致时, 可按原文顺序译出。

On August 1, the gunboat began her mission, which was, in the eyes of the defenders, a provocative act and seemed to be part of the overall assault which had begun on July 31.

分析：这个句子是由一个主句 “On August, the gunboat began her mission” 和两个由 which 引导的定语从句组成。前一个 which 引导的定语从句为非限制性定语从句，是说明主句性质的从句。在该从句中又有一个 which 引导的定语从句修饰前面的中心词 assault，由于这一连串的动作基本上是按动作发生的时间先后安排，故可按句子排列顺序依次译出。

译文：8月1日炮舰开始执行任务，在防御者看来，这是一次挑衅行动，而且似乎是7月31日开始的全面攻击的组成部分。

If she had long lost the blue-eyed, flower-like charm, the cool slim purity of face and form, the apple-blossom colouring which had so swiftly and oddly affected Ashurst twenty-six years ago, she was still at forty-three, a comely and faithful companion, whose cheeks were faintly mottled, and whose grey-blue eyes had acquired a certain fullness.

分析：这个句子是由一个主句、一个状语从句和三个定语从句组成的。“她依旧是个好看而忠实的伴侣”是主句，也是全句的中心内容。主句前面是一个条件状语从句，其中又包含一个定语从句，这个定语从句较长，所以，在译文中加破折号放在被修饰语之后。原文各句的逻辑关系、表达顺序与汉语完全一致，因此可按原句顺序译出。

译文：如果说她早已失掉了那蔚蓝色的眼睛、花儿般的魅力，也失掉了她脸儿和身段的那种玉洁冰清、苗条多姿的气质和那苹果花似的颜色——26年前这种花容月貌曾那样迅速而奇妙地影响过艾舍斯特——那么在43岁的今天，她依旧是个好看而忠实的伴侣，不过两颊淡淡地有点斑驳，而灰蓝的眼睛也已经有点儿饱满了。

2. 分译法

有时英语长句中主句与从句或主句与修饰语之间的关系并不十分密切，翻译时可按汉语多用短句的习惯，把长句中的从句或短语化为句子，分开来叙述；为使语意连贯，有时还可适当增加词语。

On the other hand, as we know, a good understanding has been obtained of wood and coal which consist chiefly of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen.

分析：这个句子的主句为 a good understanding has been obtained. of wood and coal 为 understanding 的定语，which 引导的宾语从句修饰 wood and coal，这个句子翻译时可在名词性从句 which consist ... 之前切断，化整为零。

译文：另一方面，就我们所知，对于木头和煤已经了解得很清楚，它们主要是由碳、氢和氧构成的。

While the present century was in its teens, and on one sunshiny morning in June, there drove up to the great iron gate of Miss Pinkerton's academy for young ladies, on Chiswick Mall, a large family coach, with two fat horses in blazing harness, driven by a fat coachman in a three-cornered hat and wig, at the rate of four miles an hour.

分析：这个句子是由一个主句、一个状语从句（以及和这从句相平行的 on one ... 的前置词短语）组成，但主句较长，包含了用逗号分开的两个前置词短语和一个分词短语。状语从句所指的大范围时间是整个故事发生的背景，它与主句所叙述的一件具体事情有关系，但并不密切，故可单独分译成一句。主句内的前置词短语（with ...）和分词短语（driven by ...）都是叙述“马车”；另一个前置词短语（at ...）又是这分词短语的修饰语。这三个短语都具有相对独立的意义，因而可从主句里分离开来译成独立的句子。整句可根据内容分三层相对独立的意思进行翻译。

译文：（当时）这个世纪刚过了十几年。在六月的一天早上，天气晴朗，契息克林荫道

上平克顿女子学校的大铁门前面来了一辆宽敞的私人马车。拉车的两匹肥马套着雪亮的马具，一个肥胖的车夫带了假头发和三角帽子，赶车子的速度是一小时四英里。

3. 倒置法

有些复杂长句中的表达次序与汉语表达习惯不同，甚至完全相反，翻译时必须对原文有些成分的位置进行调整，才能译出符合汉语习惯的译文来。

We were most impressed by the fact that even those patients who were not told of their illness were quite aware of its potential outcome.

分析：这个句子由一个主句及两个从句构成，主句为 We were most impressed by the fact, that 之后为同位语从句修饰 fact，在这个同位语从句中又有一个定语从句 “who ... illness” 修饰 patients。按照汉语先发生的事先叙述以及条件在先结果在后的习惯，这个句子可逆着原文顺序译出。

译文：即使那些病人没有被告知得了重病，他们也十分清楚潜在的后果。这一点给我们的印象极为深刻。

4. 拆离法

有些复杂长句的一些成分从长句主干中拆离，组成句子或短语（另作处理），才能译出符合汉语表达习惯的译文来。

Japan prisoners are permitted to receive Red Cross food parcels and write censored letters.

分析：这个长句的主语为 prisoners，谓语为 are permitted，宾语为 to receive parcels 和 to write letters, censored 做定语修饰 letters。这个句子顺译不是很合适，可将 censored letters 从整个句子中拆出，另作处理。

译文：允许日本俘虏接受红十字会的食品包裹，也允许他们写信，不过信要经过审查。

5. 插入法

利用破折号、冒号、括号等一些处理文字的标点符号，将难以处理的句子成分插入译句中，使译文更符合汉语的表达习惯。

(1) 利用破折号将难处理的句子成分插入译句中

The snow falls on every wood and field, *and no crevice is forgotten*; by the river and the pond, on the hill and in the valley.

分析：这个句子为 and 连接的两个并列句，并由多个介词短语一起构成并列成分做地点状语，由于斜体字部分难以按正常顺序处理，翻译时可利用破折号将难以处理的成分插入译句中。

译文：雪在四处飘洒着，雪花落在树上，落在田野里，落在河边湖畔、山丘、河谷——无一条岩石缝隙不飘满雪花。

(2) 利用冒号将难处理的句子成分插入译句中

Present at the Emergency Conference convened by the Security Council were the delegations of the governments concerned whose number of members varied with different countries. The Japanese delegation was composed of 15 representatives; the Soviet delegation, 20; the British delegation, 18; the French delegation, 17.

分析：这个句子按常规的译法，就会译成：“日本的代表团是由 15 人组成，……法国的代表团是由 17 人组成。”从译文内容来看，无明显的错误可言，但从文字上看，却有冗长累赘之感。为了避免重复，又能使译文醒目明了、简单扼要，该句适合用冒号插入法，

将难以处理的成分插入译句中。

译文：有关政府的代表团参加了联合国安理会召开的紧急会议，这些代表团成员的数量因国别而异。日本代表团：15人；苏联代表团：20人；英国代表团：18人；法国代表团：17人。

(3) 利用括号将难处理的句子成分插入译句中

On this and succeeding days, *during which our antircraft guns were doubled in numbers*, very hard and continuous air fighting took place over the capital and the Luftwaffe were still confident through their overestimation of our losses.

分析：这个句子的主要成分为 and 连接的两个并列句，斜体字部分为一个非限定性定语从句，其修饰前面的时间状语从句中的先行词。翻译时可利用括号将难以处理的成分插入译句中。

译文：在当天和随后的几天（我们的高射炮在这几天增加了一倍），首都上空发生了连续不断的激烈空战，德国空军由于过高估计了我们的损失，因而仍怀有信心。

由于长句所包括的语法现象比较复杂，长句的翻译实际上是各种技巧与译法的综合运用。上面所举的译例自然不能概括所有长句的处理方法。对于长句的译法，还需要我们在翻译实践中在现有的规律的基础上充分发挥翻译的创造性，从中不断探索和总结新的表达规律。

每日训练

1. 长句翻译练习

- 1) States and organizations having presented written or oral statements or both shall be permitted to comment on the statements made by other states or organizations in the form, to the extent, and within the time limits which the Court, or, should it not be sitting, the President, shall decide in each particular case.
- 2) The General Assembly may establish such subsidiary organs as it deems necessary for the performance of its function.
- 3) The global economy that boomed in the 1960s, growing at an average of 5.5 percent a year, and pushed ahead at a 4.5 percent a-year rate in the mid-1970s, simply stopped growing in 1981-1982.
- 4) The idea of a fish being able to generate electricity strong enough to light small bulbs, even to start an electric motor, is almost unbelievable.
- 5) There is also distressing possibility that Alunni isn't quite the catch the police thought.
- 6) Characteristically, Tedder concealed his feelings and watched and learned.
- 7) There is a tide in the affairs not only of men but of women too, which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.
- 8) Next door, a large-than-expected audience of 300 attended the Fifteenth International Conference on Laser Atmospheric Studies.
- 9) I believe strongly that it is in the interests of my countrymen that Britain should remain all active and energetic member of the European Community.
- 10) This land, which once barred the way of weary travelers, now has become a land

for winter and summer vacations, a land of magic and wonder.

- 11) It is extraordinary that in all the years the British spent in Egypt they never got to know the real people of Egypt.
- 12) He was again placed under house arrest when he refused to use massive force in suppressing worker riots on the seacoast.
- 13) Insects would make it impossible for us to live in the world; they would devour all our crops and kill our flocks and herds, if it were not for the protection we get from insect-eating animals.
- 14) The big problem of comprehension of the English text and the bigger problem of how to express it in rich, present-day Chinese which ranges from the classical to the colloquial both have to be solved in the course of translation.
- 15) Learning is, in too many cases, but a foil to common sense, a substitute for true knowledge. Books are less often made use of as spectacles to look at nature with, than as blinds to keep out its strong light and shifting scenery from weak eyes and indolent disposition.
- 16) Congress has made laws requiring most pressure groups to give information about how much they spend and how they spend it, the amount and sources of funds, membership, and names and salaries of their representatives.

2. 综合练习

- 1) (When one individual inflicts bodily injury upon another, such injury that death results, we call the deed man-slaughter; when the assailant knew in advance that the injury would be fatal, we call his deed murder.) But when society places hundreds of proletarians in such a position that they inevitably meet a too early and an unnatural death, one which is quite as much a death by violence as that by the sword or bullet; when it deprives thousands of the necessities of life, places them under conditions in which they cannot live — forces them, through the strong arm of the law, to remain in such conditions until that death ensues which is the inevitable consequence — knows that these thousands of victims must perish, and yet permits these conditions to remain, its deed is murder just as surely as the deed of the single individual; disguised, malicious murder, murder against which none can defend himself, which does not seem what it is, because no man sees the murderer, because the death of the victim seems a natural one, since the offence is more one of omission than of commission. (But murder it remains.)
- 2) Opera is expensive: that much is inevitable. But expensive things are not inevitably the province of the rich unless we abdicate society's power of choice. We can choose to make opera, and other expensive forms of culture, accessible to those who cannot individually pay for it. The question is: why should we? Nobody denies the imperatives of food, shelter, defense, health and education. But even in a prehistoric cave, mankind stretched out a hand not just to eat, drink or fight, but also to draw. The impulse towards culture, the desire to express and explore the world through imagination and representation is fundamental. In Europe, this desire has found fulfillment in the masterpieces of our music, art, literature and theatre.

These masterpieces are the touchstones for all our efforts; they are the touchstones for the possibilities to which human thought and imagination may aspire; they carry the most profound messages that can be sent from one human to another.



参考译文

1. 1) 凡已经提出书面或口头陈述或两项陈述之国家及团体，对于其他国家或团体所提之陈述，准其以法院或院长（在法庭不开庭时）所定关于每案之方式、范围及期限，予以评论。
- 2) 联合国大会得设立其认为于行使职务所必需之辅助机关。
- 3) 世界经济在 20 世纪 60 年代很繁荣，平均每年以 5.5% 的比率增长，到了 20 世纪 70 年代中期仍以平均每年 4.5% 的比率增长，但是在 1981 年到 1982 年就完全停止增长了。
- 4) 鱼能发电，其强度足以点亮小灯泡，甚至能开动马达，这个想法简直令人难以置信。
- 5) 还存在这样一种可能性：被抓住的那位阿路尼不见得就是警察当局所设想的那位头号人物。当然，这种可能性说出来叫人泄气。
- 6) 特德没有表露自己的感情，只是察言观色，心领神会。这是他的特点。
- 7) 人生在世，有时会走运，抓住时机，就能飞黄腾达。不但男人如此，女人也一样。
- 8) 隔壁大厅里，参加第十五届国际激光大气研究会议的人数竟达 300 名之多，这真是出乎意料。
- 9) 我坚决地认为，英国应该继续保持为欧洲共同体中积极而充满活力的成员，这是符合我国人民利益的。
- 10) 这个地方现在已经成了冬夏两季的休假胜地，风光景物蔚为奇观；而从前精疲力竭的旅游者只能到此止步。
- 11) 英国人在埃及消磨的岁月这么长久，而对真正的埃及人民却一无所知，这是颇不寻常的。
- 12) 他因拒绝使用武力大规模镇压沿海城市的工人骚乱而再次遭到软禁。
- 13) 假如没有那些以昆虫为食的动物保护我们，昆虫会吞噬我们所有的庄稼，害死我们的牛羊家畜，使我们不能生存于世。
- 14) 了解英语原意是一个大问题，现代汉语既然是文言和口语兼收并蓄，那么怎么用这样丰富多彩的文字来表达英文原文是一个更大的问题，这两个问题在翻译中都要得到解决。
- 15) 书本理应是人们观察自然的透镜，却常常被视力不够和生性懒惰的人用来遮光护眼，好使他们对自然的光芒和变幻的景色视而不见。那种把学识当做常识的陪衬，以学识代替真知的人真是太多了。
- 16) 国会已制定法律，要求大部分压力集团呈报他们花费了多少钱、怎样花的、款项的总额以及来源、成员人数、代表的姓名和薪金等情况。
2. 1) (如果一个人伤害了另一个人的身体，而且这种伤害致被害人于死，我们把这叫做杀人。如果杀人者事先知道这种伤害会致人于死，那么我们就把他的行动叫做谋杀。)但是，如果社会把千百个无产者置于这样一种境地，使他们不可避免地遭到过早的非自然的死亡，如同被刀剑或枪弹所惨杀一样；如果社会剥夺了成千上万的人的生活必需品把他们置于不能生存的境地，利用法律的铁腕强迫他们处于这种境地，直

到不可避免的结局——死亡的来临，而且社会也知道这成千上万的人一定会死去，但又听任这种情况存在下去；那么这也是一种谋杀，和个人进行的谋杀完全一样，只不过这是一种隐蔽的、恶毒的谋杀，没有人能够防御，而且看起来又不像是谋杀，因为这种罪行是一种不作为，而不是一种作为，谁也看不到谋杀者，被杀的人看起来好像是自然地死去的。（但这仍然是谋杀。）

- 2) 听歌剧，无疑是不可避免的昂贵至极。但是，昂贵的事物并非必定属于富人的范畴，除非我们放弃社会的选择权。我们可以选择去听歌剧以及其他某些昂贵的文化形式也能为那些不具备个人支付能力的人所享受。但问题是，我们有必要这么做吗？没人会否认食物、居所、防护、健康与教育的不可或缺性。但即便是在史前时代的洞穴中，人类伸出手来，早就不单纯是为了吃、喝或搏杀，而且亦进行绘画创作。人类对于文化的冲动，通过形象思维和再现手段来表现并探索世界的欲望，乃亘古有之。在欧洲，这一欲望在我们的音乐、艺术、文学和戏剧杰作中寻找到了其实现形式。这些杰作构成了我们全部努力的试金石。作为试金石，它们能衡量出人类的思想和想象力所可能企及的程度。它们携带着最寓意深刻的主题，可在人与人之间相互传递。



星期日

本周测试

1. The Pleasures of Reading

All the wisdom of the ages, all the stories that have delighted mankind for centuries, are easily and cheaply available to all of us within the covers of books — but we must know how to avail ourselves of this treasure and how to get the most from it.

I am most interested in people, in meeting them and finding out about them. Some of the most remarkable people I've met existed only in a writer's imagination, then on the pages of his book, and then, again, in my imagination. I've found in books new friends, new societies, and new worlds.

If I am interested in people, others are interested not so much in whom as in how. Who in the books includes everybody from science-fiction superman two hundred centuries in the future all the way back to the first figures in history? How covers everything from the ingenious explanations of Sherlock Holmes to the discoveries of science and ways of teaching manners to children?

Reading is a pleasure of the mind, which means that it is a little like a sport: your eagerness and knowledge and quickness make you a good reader. Reading is fun, not because the writer is telling you snitching, but because it makes your mind work. Your own imagination works along with the author's or even goes beyond his. Your experience, compared with his, brings you to the same or different conclusions, and your ideas develop as you understand his.

Every book stands by itself, like a one-family house, but books in a library are like houses in a city. Although they are separate, together they all add up to something; they are connected with each other and with other cities. The same ideas, or related ones, turn up in different places; the human problems that repeat themselves in life repeat themselves in literature, but with different solutions according to different writings at different times.

Reading can only be fun if you expect it to be. If you concentrate on books somebody tells you “ought” to read, you probably won't have fun. But if you put down a book you don't like and try another till you find one that means something to you, and then relax with it, you will almost certainly have a good time — and if you become as a result of reading, better, wiser, kinder, or more gentle, you won't have suffered during the process.

2. Is April Fools' Day Dying?

No joke: Researchers say we are moving away from personal, real-world pranks and into a world of media-driven jokes and Internet tomfoolery. Does this spell the end of April Fools' Day as we know it?

Though pranksters and joke-lovers in many countries now gleefully prepare to dupe friends and loved ones on April Fool's Day, no one knows exactly when or why, or even where, this tradition began.

The importance of this day of prank-pulling freedom is no laughing matter. It's integral to American culture, a day of funny is important to society, and also helps humans bond. Researchers say our take on comedy is changing, though. And that may mean fewer pranks in the future.

"The usual pranks that we would see 50 years ago are much less common," Gary Alan Fine, a sociologist at Northwestern University in Illinois, told *Live Science*. "I think we are seeing the decline of interpersonal pranks."

"At one time, prankstering played a bigger role in American society. Some of the prankstering was also very harmful," Joseph Boskin, a professor emeritus of history at Boston University, told *Live Science*.

This type of harmful prank-playing was usually directed toward marginalized sections of society. "Pranks have played a very big role in this situation, so I'm glad that the prankster part of it has declined, but the poking fun at life in general goes on," Boskin said.

The big problem is known where to draw the line between playful pranks and meanness on the verge of bullying, Fine said.

"Practical jokes of a certain sort shade into bullying, they shade into meanness and we are very concerned as a society about meanness," Fine said. "Finding out what that point is, is difficult for a society."

Because of our conscientiousness and desire to ensure equality, Americans may have drawn that line too far along the spectrum, hedging out playful pranking. And traditional pranking may be left out in the cold, Fine said.

3.

Possession for its own sake or in competition with the rest of the neighborhood would have been Thoreau's idea of the low levels. The active discipline of heightening one's perception of what is enduring in nature would have been his idea of the high. What he saved from the low was time and effort he could spend on the high. Thoreau certainly disapproved of starvation, but he would put into feeding himself only as much effort as would keep him functioning for more important efforts.

Effort is the gist of it. There is no happiness except as we take on life-engaging difficulties. Short of the impossible, as Yeats put it, the satisfaction we get from a lifetime depends on how high we choose our difficulties. Robert Frost was thinking in something like the same terms when he spoke of "The pleasure of taking pains". The mortal flaw in

the advertised version of happiness is in the fact that it purports to be effortless.

We demand difficulty even in our games. We demand it because without difficulty there can be no game. A game is a way of making something hard for the fun of it. The rules of the game are an arbitrary imposition of difficulty. When someone ruins the fun, he always does so by refusing to play by the rules. It is easier to win at chess if you are free, at your pleasure, to change the wholly arbitrary rules, but the fun is in winning within the rules. No difficulty, no fun.

参考译文

1. 读书的乐趣

书中藏有历代的才智学识和多少世纪以来人们所喜欢的故事传说，人人皆可获得，且方便而经济，但我们必须懂得如何利用这些宝藏，懂得如何才能从中获益最多。

我对于人特感兴趣，喜欢与人交往，了解他们。有些非常了不起的人我是这样认识的：他们起先只存在于作者的想象之中，然后出现在他写的书里，最后又生活在我的想象中。我在书中找到了新的朋友、新的社交圈子、新的世界。

如果说我感兴趣的是人，别人感兴趣的则不如说是事。从历史上记载的第一批伟人，到科幻小说中所描写两万年后的超人——书中的人物形形色色；从福尔摩斯的巧妙解释到科学的各种发现，以至教育儿童懂得礼貌的办法——书中的事物无所不有。

阅读是心智的乐事，颇有点儿像从事一项运动：需要热情、知识敏捷三者具备才能做好。读书之所以有趣，不是由于作者告诉你什么，而是由于书本促使你思考。你的想象与作者的想象一道展开，甚至超过作者的想象。你的体验与作者的体验进行对照，使你得出与作者相同或不同的结论，而你在了解作者思想的同时便形成了自己的思想。

单独一本书犹如独家小院，汇集到图书馆则好似城市中的千家万户。虽然仍是各自独立，结合起来便成为一个有意义的整体。千家万户彼此相依，又与其他城市的家家户户相连。相同的思想或相关的思想在不同的地方出现；人生中经常遇到的问题在文学中也是反复出现，但其解决办法则随着时代的不同和作品的不同而各异。

读书之所以能成为乐事，首先必须是你期待着从中得到乐趣。如果你只读别人说是你“应该”读的书，那大概就不会有什么乐趣可言。但如果你把自己感到没劲的书放下另换别的，直到发现一本你认为有意思的书，然后轻松地读下去，那么几乎可以肯定你会感到很快活的。假若你能由此而变得更聪明有为、更和蔼温厚，那么阅读本身就不会是一种苦差事了。

2. 愚人节：愚人传统正在消亡？

绝非儿戏：研究人员表示，我们与切身的、现实生活的恶作剧渐行渐远，正走进充斥着媒体炒作的笑话和网络无聊蠢事的世界。这是否意味着我们所熟知的愚人节的消亡呢？

尽管很多国家的恶作剧达人和笑话达人正兴高采烈地准备在愚人节拿爱人和朋友开涮，但没有人知道这种习俗开始的确切时间、原因甚至地点。

愚人节能随便开玩笑，但它的重要性却并非儿戏。它是美国文化不可缺少的一部分，搞笑的一天对社会很重要，有助于增进人们的关系。研究人员表示，我们的喜剧口味正发生变化，这意味着未来的恶作剧会更多。

美国伊利诺伊州西北大学的社会学家加里·艾伦·凡恩告诉“科学生活”网站：“50年前常见的恶作剧现在越来越少了。我认为人与人之间的恶作剧正在减少。”

波士顿大学的退休历史教授约瑟夫·博斯金告诉该网站：“恶作剧曾经在美国社会中扮

演着更重要的角色，有些笑话也很有害。”

社会的边缘人群通常是这种有害的恶作剧的对象。博斯金说：“恶作剧在这种情况下影响很大，因此我很高兴见到恶作剧的衰亡，但一般来讲，拿生活开涮的习惯还在继续。”

但凡恩说，最大的问题是知道如何分清幽默的恶作剧和近似于恃强凌弱行为的卑劣做法。

凡恩说：“某种类型的恶作剧渐渐会变成欺负人，渐渐变成卑鄙行为，我们对充满卑鄙行为的社会心存忧虑。但对社会而言，发现这点很困难。”

由于美国民众怀有确保平等的良知和意愿，在区别这两类时可能存在很大偏颇，将很多幽默的恶作剧排斥在外。这样一来，传统的恶作剧可能就被冷落了。

3.

梭罗所理解的“低层次”，即为了拥有而去拥有，或与所有的邻居明争暗斗而致拥有。他心目中的“高层次”，则是这样一种积极的人生戒律，即要使自己对自然界永恒之物的感悟臻于完美。对于他从低层次上节省下来的时间和精力，他可将其致力于对高层次的追求。毋庸置疑，梭罗不赞成忍饥挨饿，但他在膳食方面所投入的精力仅果腹而已，只要可确保他能去从事更为重要的事务，他便别无所求。

殚精竭虑，全力以赴，便是其精髓所在。除非我们愿意直面那些需要我们全身心投入的艰难困苦，否则便不会有幸福可言。正如叶芝所言，除却某些不可能的情形，我们于人生中所获取的满足皆取决于我们在多高的境界中选择我们所愿意面对的艰难困苦。当罗伯特·弗罗斯特言及“以苦为乐”时，他内心所思，大体如此。商业广告中所宣扬的那种幸福观，其致命的缺陷就在于这样一个事实，即它宣称，一切幸福皆唾手可得，不费吹灰之力。

即便于游戏之中，我们也需要有艰难困苦。我们之所以需要它，因为假若没有困难，便断无游戏可言。游戏即是这样一种方式，为了享受其中的乐趣而人为地使事情变得不那么轻而易举。游戏中的种种规则，便是将困难武断地强加于人。当有人将乐趣摧毁殆尽时，他总是因为拒不按游戏规则行事而使然。这犹如下棋。如果你随心所欲、心血来潮地去更改那些全然武断的游戏规则，这样去赢棋当然会更加容易。但下棋的乐趣则在于，应在规则的限定范围内赢取胜利。一言以蔽之，没有艰难，断无乐趣。

第二周 汉译英翻译技巧

- 星期一 汉译英基本考情分析及翻译准备工作
- 星期二 汉译英解题技巧（一）
词的选择、词的增补
- 星期三 汉译英解题技巧（二）
词的省译、词类的转换、语态的转换
- 星期四 汉译英解题技巧（三）
语序的变换、正说与反说
- 星期五 汉译英解题技巧（四）
省略句、否定句、倒装句的译法
- 星期六 汉译英解题技巧（五）
无主句、长句、习语的译法
- 星期日 本周测试

星期一

汉译英基本考情分析及翻译准备工作

一、汉译英考情分析

根据对国内部分重点院校题型的统计，汉译英这种题型的分值一般在 15 分。教育部 1992 年颁布的《非英语专业研究生英语教学大纲》规定，博士生汉译英教学要求是能借助词典，将一般难度的短文翻译成英语，无重大语言错误，笔译速度达到每小时 250 个左右汉字。

二、汉译英基础知识储备

做好汉译英题，考生需要把握：大意是关键（问题现状、产生原因、造成影响、人们观点、合理建议），语句有逻辑（并列、转折、因果、条件、对比），用词需斟酌（词性、拼写、近义词选择），语法有重点（各词的单复数、动词的时态、语态、动词的重复）。

首先来回顾一下几种基本句型：

（一）简单句

1. 主语 + 谓语（不及物动词）（+ 状语）

例句：我国老年人口明显增多。

译文：The population of the old increased greatly in our nation.

2. 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语

例句：美国的一些公司打算在电信和信息技术方面提供产品和服务。

译文：Some American companies are planning to provide products and service in telecommunication and information technology.

3. 主语 + 系动词 + 表语（形容词、to do）

感官动词有：feel, look, sound, taste, smell, seem, appear 等。

典型的系动词有：grow, get, turn, fall, go, come, run 等。

表示状态的动词有：remain, continue, stay, keep, rest, prove, turn 等。

例句：很多人对此看起来忧心忡忡。

译文：Many people looked worried about it.

4. 双宾语（主语 + 谓语 + 直接宾语 + to/for/of + 间接宾语）

例句：请相信我完全没有冒犯你的意思。

译文: Please trust me that I had no intention to offend you.

译文: Please trust me that I had no intention of offending you.

(二) 复合句

1. that 引导的主语从句

据说……It is said that ...

据展示……It is shown that ...

据报道……It is reported that ...

据观察……It is observed that ...

据统计……It is estimated that ...

很显然……It is obvious that ...

据观察……It can be seen that ...

据发现……It can be found that ...

众所周知……It is well-known that ...

很容易证明……It can be easily proved that ...

2. 宾语 (that 可以省略) 从句、表语从句 (that 一般不省略)

他们知道……They know (that) ...

他们认为……They believe (that) ...

他们表示……They show (that) ...

他们了解……They understand (that) ...

他们指出……They point out (that) ...

原因在于……The reason is that ...

相同在于……The similarity is that ... (The similarities are that ...)

不同在于……The difference is that ... (The differences are that ...)

优点在于……The advantage is that ... (The advantages are that ...)

缺点在于……The disadvantage is that ... (The disadvantages are that ...)

例句: 科学家们说, 如果要使地球继续供养人类生存, 保护野生动物是极为重要的。

译文: Scientists believe that it is so important to protect wild animals if it is true for the earth to feed humans.

3. 定语从句 (先行词 + 关系代词 (副词) + 完整句子)

例句: 文化是不同国家的人们互相理解的最佳媒体。

译文: Culture is the best media that can be used to make the understandings between different countries.

(三) 并列句

伴随关系: Along with/With + 名词, 动名词, As + 完整句子

并列关系: not only, but also, ...

转折关系: although, though, but, however, ...

因果关系: because, since, as, so that, therefore, thus, ...

举例关系: such as, like, as, including, for example, for instance, ...

三、汉译英翻译过程

翻译过程包括理解和表达两个重要阶段。只有在正确理解原文的基础上，才能正确地表达原文。理解原文词句不应脱离上下文。词义总是受上下文制约的，没有上下文就没有词义。比如说：

甲乙两人见面，甲说：“上课了？”这句话的含义，如果脱离了当时的环境和背景，就只好翻译。

如果这句话是在乙夹着书本刚从教室里走出来时甲对乙说的，那么它的意思是：“（你刚才）上课了？”译成英语便是：(Have you) Just finished your class?

如果乙以前没有教过课，最近才开始任课，那么甲的这句话就可以译为：How's your first class?

倘若甲乙相遇时，甲正好急急忙忙向课堂走去，担心误了上课，见到乙便问：“上课了？”那么这句话就成为“（是不是已经）上课了？”的意思，应译为：Has the bell gone? 或译为：Am I late for class?

由此可见，同样的词句在不同的语言环境里包含着不尽相同或全然不同的意思，理解和翻译时必须加以区别，不然就会造成错误，也就无法忠于原文内容。

至于表达，涉及的问题很多。其中最重要的一点是：考生必须避免机械照搬的死译和望文生义的乱译。例如：

1) 他（听到这话）心里一跳，脸色也变了。

译文：At this his heart missed a beat and he became pale.

原文“心里一跳”译成 missed a beat，两者字面意思完全相反，但表达了同样的含义。如果机械照搬原文形式，译成：His heart jumped and the colour of his face changed 就不符合译文语言表达习惯了。在翻译时，如果不根据汉英两种语言表达上的差异作必要的变动，而采取词与词“对号入座”的办法，既不能达意，又无法忠实于原文。

2) 三四个筛酒的酒保，都手忙脚乱，搬东搬西。（施耐庵《水浒传》）

译文：But these serving men were so busy, their hands and feet were all in confusion, and they were moving things hither and thither, east and west. (All Men Are Brothers)

以 busy 表达“手忙脚乱”本已够了，把“手忙脚乱”按字译出，反而费解。

“东西”实为“物件”或“酒饭”，并不指方向；“搬”也不指“搬动”。这里，“手忙脚乱”和“搬东搬西”的译法是拘泥原文字面的一个比较典型的译例。

在另一译文中，虽未照搬原文字句却表达出原文的含义。

... the four or five waiters were busy rushing from one to another serving food and drink. (Outlaws of the Marsh)

3) 你不知道，金八这家伙背景复杂，不大讲面子。（曹禺《日出》）

译文：Don't you realize that this fellow Jin has all kinds of dubious connections and that he's no great respecter of persons?

原文中的陈述句在译文中转换为疑问句，同时利用英语成语 no respecter of persons（不是看人行事的人，不偏心的人，对任何人一律看待的人）译出“不大讲面子”的含义，形式虽有改变，但却表达出原文的思想内容。

理解和表达常是相互联系、相辅相成的。考生在理解原文的同时，也在选择表达方式；在表达的同时，又会进一步加深理解。这样，经过反复推敲，使译文达到忠实于原文这一

基本要求。

提高翻译能力，绝无捷径。初学者应不断提高汉英两种语言的水平，在实践中学习翻译理论和常用技巧，提高翻译能力。只有遵循“实践——认识——再实践——再认识”这一规律，不断练习，不断总结，逐步认识汉英两种语言在表达方面的相同之处与不同之处，才能积极而有效地提高翻译能力。

每日训练

1 科学技术是第一生产力。振兴经济首先要振兴科技，只有坚定地推动科技进步，才能在激烈的竞争中取得主动。我国经济正面临着加速发展，调整结构，提高效益的重大任务，尤其需要全社会提高科技意识，多方面增加科技投入，真正依靠科技进步。

2 英语现在是 60 多个国家使用的官方或半官方语言。它是书籍出版、科学技术、广告和通俗音乐、计算机信息存储所使用的主要国际语言。现在有 4 亿多人以英语为母语，另外大约有 4 亿人将英语作为第二语言，至少还有 5 亿人把英语作为外语使用。

3 中国已经发展成为一个全球极富吸引力的、现实的大市场。世界各国和地区不少有远见卓识的企业家，都将目光投向了我国，并从投资活动中获得了丰厚的回报。

4 现在我们面临健康研究中的 4 大挑战：道德价值、公平和美德、可持续的健康研究体系、良好的研究环境及知识的产生和应用。为了应对挑战，保障体系和健康研究体系两者应向一个学习的和解决问题的模式推进，把创新包括到运作之中，更好地掌握未来发展的机遇。没有效果明显的锦囊妙计，没有简单的解决方法，只是有许多事情要去学习。

5 在美国历史上人们最津津乐道的政治问题恐怕就是法律与秩序。但令人感到痛心的是，显然有好几百万美国人从来没有想到过自己会是违法者，更不用说是犯罪分子了，他们越来越不把那些旨在保护他们的社会法律条文放在心上。如今，人们随手乱扔垃圾、偷税漏税、发出违禁噪音，以及开车时表现出来的无政府状态，可谓是司空见惯。有时不由使人觉得，藐视法令者竟可代表未来的潮流了。

6 千方百计扩大就业。各级政府务必坚持就业优先战略，继续实施更加积极的就业政策。今年年底前实现新型农村社会养老保险和城镇居民社会养老保险制度全覆盖。城镇居民医保和新农合补助标准提高到每人每年 240 元。继续稳定低生育水平，综合治理出生人口性别比偏高问题，提高出生人口质量。继续推进保障性安居工程建设，在确保质量的前提下，基本建成 500 万套，新开工 700 万套以上。

7 着力排查化解各类社会矛盾。积极稳妥推进户籍管理制度改革。加强和改进互联网管理，营造健康的网络环境。

8 进一步转变政府职能，完善宏观调控体系，理顺政府与市场的关系。深化财税金融体制改革。深化土地、户籍、公共服务改革。推进社会事业、收入分配等改革。推进依法行政和社会管理创新。鼓励民间资本进入铁路、市政、金融、能源、电信、教育、医疗等领域。

9 保持对外贸易稳定发展。引导外资更多投向先进制造业、高新技术产业、节能环保产业、现代服务业和中西部地区。加强对外投资风险管理，维护我境外企业人员和资产安全。

10 全力支持香港、澳门发展经济，改善民生，推进民主。新的一年，我们要继续坚持中央对台工作的大政方针，增强两岸关系发展的政治、经济、文化和民意基础，拓展两岸关系和平发展新局面。

参考译文

1 Science and technology are primary productive forces. First of all, to revive the — economy is to revitalize the science and technology. Only to firmly promote the scientific and technological progress can the initiative be obtained in the fierce competition to obtain the initiative. China's economy is faced with the major task to accelerate development, adjust structure and improve efficiency. In particular, the whole society is required to raise awareness of science and technology, increase multifaceted investment in science and technology, and truly rely on scientific and technological progress.

2 English is now the official or semi-official language used by more than 60 countries. — It is the mainly used international language in book publishing, science and technology, ad, pop music and computer information storage. Today more than 400 million people use English as their mother tongue. In addition, about 400 million people use English as a second language, and at least 500 million people use English as a foreign language.

3 China has developed into a big, extremely attractive and realistic market in the — global context. Many farsighted entrepreneurs from countries and regions all over the world have paid their attention to China and got generous profits in return from their investment activities.

4 Now we are faced with four key challenges for health research: values of ethics, — equity and excellence, sustainable health research systems, favorable research environment, and knowledge production and application. To rise to the challenge, health systems and health research systems together should move into a learning and problem-solving mode, integrate innovation into their operations and better manage opportunities for future growth and development. There are no quick fixes, no simple solutions and much remains to be learnt.

5 In American history, the political issue that people always took delight in talking — about may be law and order. However, what makes people distressed is to notice that millions of Americans obviously have never thought of being law-breakers themselves, let alone criminals, who tend to pay less and less attention to the provision of laws which aims at protecting them. Nowadays, it is not uncommon for average people to litter at ease, to evade taxes, to make forbidden noises, and to ignore discipline when they are at the wheels. Sometimes, people are made to feel that those who neglect law represent the future trends.

6 China will make every effort to increase employment and the government must — continue to follow the strategy of giving top priority to employment. By the end of the year, the country will have achieved full coverage of the new old-age pension system for

rural residents and the old-age pension system for non-working urban residents. The government will raise subsidies for medical insurance for non-working urban residents and the new type of rural cooperative medical care system to 240 yuan per person per year. It will continue to keep the birthrate low and redress gender imbalance. It will continue to develop low-income housing, and basically complete 5 million units and start construction on over 7 million units.

7 The government will work hard to resolve social conflicts. It will actively yet prudently — carry forward the reform of the household registration system. It will strengthen and improve management of the Internet and foster a healthy cyberspace environment.

8 China will transform government functions and balance the relationship between — government and the market. It will advance reform of the fiscal and taxation systems. It will deepen reforms of land, household registration and public services. It will carry forward reforms in social programs and income distribution. It will run the government in accordance with the law and promote innovation in social administration. It will encourage nongovernmental investment in railways, public utilities, finance, energy, telecommunications, education, and medical care.

9 The government will maintain steady growth in foreign trade. It will encourage more — foreign investment in advanced manufacturing, new and high technologies, energy conservation, environmental protection, new service industries, and the central and western regions. It will support companies making overseas investments, strengthen risk management of overseas investments and protect the safety of employees and assets of Chinese enterprises operating overseas.

10 The central government will fully support Hong Kong and Macao in growing their — economies, improving the people's wellbeing and promoting democracy. In 2012, the mainland will strengthen the political, economic, and cultural foundation and public support for growing cross-Straits relations and make further progress in promoting peaceful development.

星期二

汉译英解题技巧（一）

词的选择、词的增补

一、词的选择

在汉译英中，考生经常会望文生义或混淆词义。比如：

1) 闲人免进！

误译：No admittance except on business!

改译：Staff Only!

2) 油漆未干！

误译：Paint is not dry!

改译：Wet paint!

3) 我认为读书应该有选择性。

误译：It is my opinion that reading must be selectively.

改译：In my opinion, reading should be selective.

4) 那位老妇过马路时被车撞了。

误译：The old woman was hit by a car when she across the street.

改译：The old woman was hit by a car when she was crossing the street.

由此可见，在汉译英的过程中，词义的选择至关重要。词是语言的建筑材料，文章译得好不好，能不能达意，都与选词有密切的关系。

要选好词，必须注意以下几点：

1. 通读原文，根据上下文正确理解原文的词义

中文中每个词都有一定的含义，有些词甚至有很多种含义。对于考生来说，理解原文不是说能不能看懂原文，而是要透彻地掌握词语在上下文中的确切含义。如果混淆词义，则很容易造成用词不当。每个词都有一定的含义，如果混淆词义，很容易造成用词不当。例如：

1) 他认为，有钱了，就应该大吃大喝。

误译：He takes it for granted that as he has got enough money, he should eat and drink extravagantly.

改译：He takes it for granted that as he has got enough money, he deserves to eat and drink extravagantly.

分析：“应该”有两层意思。

一是根据责任或伦理做某事，所做之事对施事者有好处。英语用情态动词 should 表

达。如：你应该每天锻炼身体，那对你有好处。

You should do exercise everyday, which will do you good.

二是因为实施了某事，根据逻辑或道理可能会得到某种结果或相应的反馈。“应该”表示可能发生的结果，英语用 **deserve** 来表达。如：她是个乐于帮助的人，应该得到赞赏。

She deserves admiration for she's always willing to help.

2) 单位的好人好事应该受到表扬。

误译：**Good persons and good deeds in the company should be praised.**

改译：**Good-doers and their deeds in the company should be praised.**

分析：这里的“好人”是指“做好事的人”，应译为 **good-doers**，如果译成 **good persons**，就将单位的人分为好人与坏人，与原文意思不符。

2. 辨析词义、正确选词

了解句子中的词所隐含的各种信息，包括狭义、广义、感情色彩等。只有这样才能保证表达准确，避免出现偏差。

(1) 注意词的广义和狭义

例如：

农业是国民经济的基础。

Agriculture is the foundation of the national economy.

农、林、牧、副、渔互相结合的方针

The principle of combining farming, forestry, animal husbandry, side-occupations and fishery

分析：第1句话中的“农业”一词是广义的，指一切农业经济，包括农业、畜牧业、林业、渔业等，故译为 **agriculture**。但在第2句话中，农与林牧副渔业并立，是指耕作的农业，不是指整个农业经济，故译为 **farming**。

(2) 注意词义的褒贬

由于人们对事物的态度不同，就会使用含有不同感情色彩的词，或肯定、赞扬，或否定、鄙视。这种感情色彩应相应地在译文总表达出来。例如：

小明的祖父于90岁时仙逝了。(褒义)

Xiao Ming's grand-father passed away when he was 90.

臭名昭著的希特勒最终一命呜呼了。(贬义)

Finally, the ill-reputed Hitler kicked the bucket.

(3) 根据词的搭配进行选词

汉英两种语言在长期的使用过程中形成了各自的固定词组和搭配用法，翻译时必须注意两者的不同，不要将汉语词的搭配用法生搬硬套到译入语中。例如：

学习知识

误译：**learn knowledge**

改译：**acquire knowledge**

强硬政策

误译：**strong policy**

改译：**tough policy**

送卫星上天

误译：**send a satellite**

改译: launch a satellite

上飞机

误译: get on a plane

改译: board a plane

“水平”

- a) 提高生活水平: upgrade the living standard
- b) 提高会话水平: improve one's conversational ability
- c) 提高领导水平: improve the art of leadership
- d) 提高文化水平: raise the intellectual level
- e) 提高教育水平: improve the educational degree

“破旧的”

- a) 破旧的车站: a dilapidated station
- b) 破旧的鞋子: a pair of worn-out shoes
- c) 破旧的草帽: a shabby straw hat
- d) 破旧的家具: disreputable furniture

“问题”

- a) 共同关心的问题 questions of common interest
- b) 解决问题 solve a problem
- c) 问题的关键 the heart of the matter
- d) 关键问题 a key problem
- e) 原则问题 a question / matter of principle
- f) 悬而未决的问题 an outstanding issue
- g) 收音机有点问题 Something is wrong with the radio.
- h) 问题不在这里 That is not the point.

3. 注意汉语文化与英语文化的差异

每种语言都是在特定的文化环境中形成的, 所以不同语言的文字有其自身特有的文化内涵, 有时很难通过译文用另一种语言文字来表达。为了让读者能看懂译文, 考生需要用符合读者文化的文字来表达地道的译入语。

例如:

害群之马 a black sheep

蠢得像猪 as stupid as a goose

挥金如土 to spend money like water

掌上明珠 the apple of someone's eye

棋逢对手 diamond cut diamond

挂羊头卖狗肉 to cry up wine and sell vinegar

湿得像落汤鸡 as wet as a drowned rat

如鱼得水 like a duck to water

下岗工人 laid-off workers

热锅上的蚂蚁 like a cat on a hot tin roof

说到底, 汉译英中词的选择是对英文词汇知识的综合考量。翻译不正确, 归根结底是由于对英文词的含义模棱两可、用法含糊不清而导致的。考生需在平时多积累词汇量, 并

掌握词的搭配用法，用译入语的思维方式和表达方式恰当地表达出来。

二、词的增补

汉英两种语言由于用词造句的规律不同，因而在表达同一个思想时常需在译文中增补一些原文中没有的词语。通常增补词语是出于以下两方面的需要。

（一）为了保证译文语法结构的完整

在汉译英时，为了保证译文语法结构完整而需要增补词语的现象大致可分以下四类：

1. 增补代词（或名词）

（1）增补做主语的代词（或名词）

汉语里无主语的句子相当多，英语则不同，句子一般都需要有主语。所以在翻译这类无主语句子时有时要采用被动式或“there be ...”结构等办法。此外，下文的意思选择适当的代词（或名词）来补出主语。例如：

接到你的来信，非常高兴。

I was very glad to have received your letter.

要有把握，就要有准备，而且要有充分的准备。

To ensure success, one must be prepared, and fully prepared at that.

（2）增补物主代词

增补物主代词在汉语里远不如英语里用得得多，在英语里凡说到一个人的器官和归他所有的或与他有关的事物时，总要在前面加上物主代词。例如：

她用手蒙住脸，好像是为了保护眼睛。

She covered her face with her hand, as if to protect her eyes.

孩子们天天带午饭到学校去吃。

The children take their lunches to school every day.

以上各例的译文中所增加的物主代词 her, their, our, 从汉语的角度来看，都是多余的，可是就英语来说，则是不可缺少的。

（3）增补做宾语的代词

汉语句子中，只要从上下文里能够看得清楚，则做宾语的代词常常可以省略，可是英语就不行，凡及物动词都得有宾语。因此汉译英时，经常要增补做宾语的代词。例如：

交出翻译之前，必须读几遍，看看有没有要修改的地方。

Before handing in your translation, you have to read it over and over again and see if/whether there is anything in it to be corrected.

把这些故事看完以后，用你自己的话讲一遍。

After you have read these stories, tell them in your own words.

2. 增补连词

汉语中的词、词组、分句或句子之间的关系往往通过上下文及语序来表示，较少用连词。英语通常需要用连词来表明词与词、词组与词组以及句与句之间的逻辑关系。因此在汉译英时，需要增补连词的情况会很多，有时需增补并列连词，有时需增补从属连词。例如：

虚心使人进步，骄傲使人落后。

Modesty helps one to go forward, whereas conceit makes one lag behind.

跑了和尚，跑不了庙。

The monk may run away, but the temple cannot run away with him.

3. 增补介词

介词是英语中最活跃的词类之一，英语句子大多都有介词。汉语中不需介词，在英语中却常用。因此在汉译英时，经常需要增补介词。例如：

你经常想到帮助别人是很好的。

It is good of you to be always thinking of helping others.

公共场所不准吸烟。

Smoking is prohibited in public places.

4. 增补冠词

汉译英时往往还需要增补必要的冠词。

月亮慢慢从海上升起。

The moon was slowly rising above the sea.

我们对问题要作全面的分析，才能解决得妥当。

We must make a comprehensive analysis of a problem before it can be properly solved.

(二) 为了保证译文意思的明确

为了这个目的而增补的词语大致可分为以下三类。

1. 增补原文中暗含而无须明言的词语

汉语和英语的习惯用法不同。汉语中某一说法本来是很清楚的，谁也不会误解，可是如果生搬硬套，逐字译成英语，就很可能不达原意，甚至还会引起误解或铸成大错。为了避免出现这种情况，就必须在译文中增补适当的词，把原文中暗含的意思明确表示出来。例如：

1) 螳螂捕蝉，黄雀在后。

误译：The mantis stalks the cicada, the oriole is behind itself.

改译：The mantis stalks the cicada, unaware of the oriole lurking behind itself.

这句话的中文意思大家都懂，但如果直接按字翻译的话，可能很多英语国家人都看不懂什么意思。这时就要加入 unaware of 和 lurking 这两个动词，使意思明确。

2) 风声鹤唳，草木皆兵。

这句成语中，“风声”、“鹤唳”都是名词，而“草木皆兵”直接翻译成“草木都是兵”也会让英语国家的人看得一头雾水。所以，在翻译这句话时，同样要加入未表露出来的动词意思，使句子明确。

译文：Be scared by the sight of the wind or the cry of the cranes, fearing ambush at every tree and tuft of grass.

3) 虽然中国妇女在平等方面取得了巨大的进步，但还未完全实现平等的就业机会。

汉语可以说“实现……机会”，但英语不可说“realize the opportunity of ...”，而要说“realize / accomplish the goal/aim of ...”。

译文：It is true that Chinese women have made enormous strides toward equality. But the goals of equal opportunity of employment for women have not been fully realized.

2. 增补注释性词语

汉语中的典故、谚语和在一定历史、政治条件下形成的某些名词、术语和简化说法，

汉语读者熟悉，一看就明白，但是英语读者就不见得能懂。因此翻译时就得适当地添加一些注释性词语。例如：

班门弄斧。

Show off one's proficiency with the axe before Lu Ban, the master carpenter.

三个臭皮匠，顶个诸葛亮。

Three cobblers with their wits combined equal Zhuge Liang, the master mind.

这两个例子，如果不在译文中分别加上 the master carpenter 和 the master mind，译作 Lu Ban 和 Zhuge Liang，则大多数英语读者恐怕都不知道他们是何许人，因而也就无法理解本句的内在含义。

每日训练

1. 翻译下列各句，注意词的选择和搭配。

- 1) 那个小孩闯到马路中间，一个警察赶紧抓住他的手，把他拉到安全的地方。
- 2) 那个受惊的小孩紧紧地抓住他母亲的手。
- 3) 他因犯伪造罪而被拘捕了。
- 4) 他把自己的一生献给为人民服务的事业。
- 5) 有什么事，告诉我一声。
- 6) 不许他给我们集体脸上抹黑。
- 7) 新生儿需要细心护理。
- 8) 空气是由多种气体混合组成的。
- 9) 他醉心于医学研究。
- 10) 那个人醉心于名利。

2. 翻译下列各句，根据需要增补适当的词语。

- 1) 海外侨胞常说：“我们的心永远向着祖国。”
- 2) 有人来电话，你就说我 12 点回来。
- 3) 他扯着嗓门向我们呼喊。
- 4) 比他技术高明一点的人，他叫人家老师傅。
- 5) 所有公民在法律面前一律平等。
- 6) 他虽是初次登台演出，却演得很自然。
- 7) 这真是俗话说得的，“旁观者清。”
- 8) 他们一听说有新任务，就坐不住了。
- 9) 在全面开创新局面的各项任务中，首要的任务是把现代化经济建设推向前进。
- 10) 只要中国人民积极奋斗，这个宏伟的战略目标是能够达到的。

3. 综合练习

- 1) 每个人一生中都应该有个志向，否则他的精力便会浪费掉。每个青年人都力求成为一个有成就的人。一个青年人只期望富有是不明智的，或只专心于求得权力与名望也是不对的。一个青年人希望做个有成就者，愿望常常会实现。狄斯拉里（Disraeli）的故事是个例证。狄斯拉里开始过公众生活时渴望能成为一个学者及演说家。他在文学方面的成就比演说方面更为成功。起初他作为一个演说家时是完全失败的。不过，他认为有把握克服障碍，遂以不屈不挠的精神致力于这个目标的实现。他的一

些朋友认为他这个念头是愚蠢的，甚至是古怪的，但他坚持目标，最后终于成功，成为英国曾经产生的最有丰富知识的学者与最雄辩的演说家之一。这个故事并不是引来说明：只是大学者或演说家，或二者兼而有之者才是有成就的人。除了做学者或演说家之外，还有许多同样高尚与可敬的事业。它只是用来说明一个青年人须志向高远，因为“宁可志高而达不到目标，也不要志低而达到”。

- 2) 来美国求学的中国学生与其他亚裔学生一样，大多非常刻苦勤奋，周末也往往会抽出一天甚至两天的时间去实验室加班，因而比起美国学生来，成果出得较多。我的导师是亚裔人，嗜烟好酒，脾气暴躁。但他十分欣赏亚裔学生勤奋与扎实的基础知识，也特别了解亚裔学生的心理。因此，在他实验室所招的学生中，除有一名来自德国外，其余5位均是亚裔学生。他干脆在实验室的门上贴一醒目招牌：“本室助研必须每周工作7天，早10时至晚12时，工作时间必须全力以赴。”这位导师的严格及苛刻是全校有名的，在我所待的3年半中，共有14位学生被招进他的实验室，最后博士毕业的只剩下5人。1990年夏天，我不顾别人劝阻，硬着头皮接受了导师的资助，从此开始了艰难的求学旅程。

参考译文

1. 1) The child ran into the street, but a policeman hurried up to seize him by the arm and pulled him back to safety.
2) The frightened child gripped his mother's hand.
3) He was apprehended on a charge of forgery.
4) He dedicated his whole life to serving the people.
5) Let me know if anything happens.
6) We're not going to let him bring shame on our collective.
7) Newborn babies need careful nursing.
8) Air is made up of a mixture of gases.
9) He is deeply engrossed in medical research.
10) That chap is infatuated with fame and gain.
2. 1) The overseas Chinese usually say, "Our hearts are always towards our motherland."
2) Whoever telephones, tell them I shall be back by 12 o'clock.
3) He shouted to us at the top of his voice.
4) Those whose technical level was higher than his own he addressed as "Masters".
5) All citizens are equal before the law.
6) His acting was very natural though it was the first time he appeared on the stage.
7) It is just as the proverb goes, "The onlooker sees most of the game." (Or: The spectator is in a better position to judge.)
8) When they learnt that they'd been given a new task, they just couldn't sit still any longer.
9) Of the various tasks in bringing about an all-round new situation, the most important one is to push forward the modernization of China's economy.
10) If the Chinese people work hard, they can definitely attain this grand strategic objective.

3. 1) Everyone needs an aspiration in his life; otherwise his energy will be dissipated. Every young man should strive to become a man of achievements. It's not wise for young people to seek a life of abundance simply. It's also not wise to immerse themselves totally in pursuing power and energy. Young people who harbor the ambition of becoming a man of achievements can always realize their dream. One example is Disraeli. Disraeli has dreamed of becoming a scholar and orator ever since the beginning of his public life when he had more achievements in literature than in giving a speech. At first, his attempt to become an orator was a total failure. But holding a belief that he can overcome any difficulty, he began working on this goal in indomitable spirit. Some of his friends believed that his idea was strange and even weird, but he held it on to the last and finally succeeded as one of the most erudite scholars and the most eloquent orators in English history. Disraeli's story doesn't mean that to be a man of achievements, we should all become a scholar, an orator or both at the same time, for we will have many other respectable professions to undertake. It is only used to demonstrate that young people should have lofty aspirations, because "aiming high and failing to realize it is much better than aiming low and succeeding in reaching it."
- 2) Like students from other Asian countries and regions, most Chinese students who come to pursue further education in the United States work on their studies most diligently and assiduously. Even on weekends, they would frequently spend one day, or even two days, to work overtime in their laboratories. Therefore, compared with their American counterparts, they are more academically fruitful. My supervisor (advisor / tutor) is of Asian origin who is addicted to alcohols and cigarettes, with a sharp (an irritable) temper. Nevertheless, he highly appreciates the industry and the solid foundational knowledge of Asian students and has a particularly keen insight into the psychology of Asian students. Hence, of all the students recruited by his laboratory, except for one German, the rest five were all from Asia. He even put a striking notice on the door of his lab, which read, "All the research assistants of this laboratory are required to work 7 days a week, from 10 AM to 12 PM. Nothing but work during the working hours." This supervisor is reputed on the entire campus for his severity and harshness. In the course of the 3 and half years that I stayed there, a total of 14 students were recruited into his laboratory and only 5 of them stayed on until they graduated with their Ph. D. degrees. In the summer of 1990, ignoring the remonstrations (admonishments / dissuasions) from others, I accepted my supervisor's sponsorship and embarked on the difficult journey of academic pursuit (undertaking further studies in the United States).

星期三

汉译英解题技巧（二）

词的省译、词类的转换、语态的转换

一、词的省译

与词的增补情况相反，原文中有些词语从译文的角度来看往往是多余的，可以或必须删去，不能一字不漏地生搬硬套过来，不然译文会出现文理不通、意思含糊等弊病。词的省略的目的正是为了使译文符合英语的表达习惯和修辞特点。

省略词语绝不意味着可以随意删除原文的词句，而必须同样遵守一些原则。省去的词语必须是：一是在译文中看来是可有可无的或是多余的；二是其意思已经包含在上下文里；三是其含义在译文中是不言而喻的。汉译英中所省略的词语可分为以下几类。

1 原文中重复出现的词语

汉语中为了讲究句子的平衡、气势、韵调，常常使用排比、对仗、重复等修辞手段。因此在汉语句子中，一些词或词组重复使用的现象和结构类似、含义相同的几个词组连用的现象是相当普遍的。英语则不然。因此在汉译英时，原文中含义重复的词语往往只译出其中一个，如铜墙铁壁（bastion of iron）；或作为一个整体来译（the gift of the gab），其他部分则予以省略。例如：

能工巧匠 skilled craftsman

油嘴滑舌 glib tongue

心慈手软 soft-hearted

称兄道弟 to call each other brothers

愁眉苦脸 to pull on a long face

2 原文中表示范畴的词语

汉语里有一些名词，如任务、工作、情况、状态、问题、制度、事业、局面等通常有具体的含义，应当照译，但是它们用来表明范畴时，则失去了具体含义，一般可以省略不译。如“分析问题”中的“问题”一词就有具体含义，非译出不可；而“人民内部矛盾问题”中的“问题”则是表明范畴，不必译出，只需译作 contradictions among the people 就行了。在这里，“矛盾”就是一种“问题”，而“问题”一词仅仅表明这种“矛盾”所属的范畴。以下进一步说明这方面的省略现象。例如：

我们党结束了那个时期的社会动荡和纷扰不安的局面。

Our Party has put an end to the social unrest and upheaval of that time.

原句中“社会动荡和纷扰不安”，本身就是一种局面，从意义上来说，句子里加上“局面”这范畴词似乎多此一举，但是汉语“结束”这一动词不能直接与“社会动荡和纷

扰不安”搭配。因此加上“局面”二字不仅保证了动宾的搭配得当，而且意思也更加清楚。与此相反，英语中 put ... end to 可以直接与 the social unrest and upheaval 搭配，无须再加范畴词。因此，原文中“局面”二字便可省略不译。

3 可能影响译文修辞效果的词语

汉语中，有时为了语言生动、简练，常用具体形象词语或成语作比喻，有时为了加强语气，可以连续使用好几个短句。在翻译这类句子时，某些词语可以省略不译或加以简化和压缩，否则译文势必拖泥带水、松散无力，反而失去原文的特色。所谓简化和压缩：一是译出主要的和不可缺少的词语，略去次要的或不言而喻的词语；二是将具体词语抽象概括为笼统的概念词。例如：

花园里面是人间乐园，有的是吃不了的大米白面，穿不完的绫罗绸缎，花不完的金银财宝。

The garden was a paradise on earth, with more food and clothes than could be consumed and more money than could be spent.

原文中的“大米白面”、“绫罗绸缎”、“金银财宝”等四字词组分别指“吃的”、“穿的”、“花的”，可直截了当地译成 food, clothes, money。这样虽然丧失了原文四字词组的特点及其比喻性，但是在文学表达上仍不失为简洁明了，符合英语习惯。如果按原文逐字译出，句子就会显得累赘、臃肿。

二、词类的转换

在翻译过程中，要做到既忠实于原文又符合译文语言规范，就不能机械地按原文词类“对号入座”，逐字硬译，而需要适当改变一些词类：即把原文中属于某种词类的词在译文中转换成另一种词类。这就是翻译上通常所说的“词类转换”。

词类转换是汉译英中很重要的方法之一，运用得当，可使译文通顺流畅；符合英语习惯，否则译文可能显得生硬累赘。现将汉译英时最常见的词类转换现象介绍如下：

1 汉语的动词转换成英语的名词

汉语中动词用得较多，除大量的动宾结构外，还有连动式、兼语式等两个以上动词连用的现象。而英语则不然，一句话往往只用一个谓语动词，而且英语的名词也比汉语的名词用得更多。由于两种语言各自所具有的这种特点，汉译英时常常需要把汉语动词转换成英语名词。有时，随着汉语动词的这种转换，修饰该动词的副词也自然需要转换。例如：

他在讲话中特别强调提高产品质量。

In his speech he laid special stress on raising the quality of the products.

绝对不许违反这个原则。

No violation of this principle can be tolerated.

2 汉语的动词转换成英语的形容词

汉语中一些表示知觉、情感等心理状态的动词，往往可以转换成英语形容词，例如：

他们怀疑他是否能负担得起。

They are doubtful whether he can afford it.

他可晓得他儿子的行为表现吗？

Is he aware of his son's behavior?

我们绝不满足于现有的成就。

We are not content with our present achievements.

3 汉语的动词转换成英语的介词或介词词组

与汉语相比,英语用介词较多,而且有一些英语介词本是由动词演变而来的,具有动词的特征。因此在汉译英时,汉语的一些动词常常可译为英语的介词或介词词组。例如:

我们全体赞成他的建议。

We were all in favor of his suggestion.

他们不顾一切困难、挫折,坚持战斗。

They kept on fighting in spite of all difficulties and setbacks.

4 汉语的形容词或副词转换成英语的名词

在汉译英时,有时出于语法结构和修辞上的需要,也可以把汉语的一些形容词或副词转译成英语的名词。例如:

空气是这样的清香,使人胸脯里感到分外凉爽、舒畅。

The air was fresh and fragrant, and it gave people a feeling of exceptional coolness and comfort.

在全国文明礼貌月中,所有城市必须搞好卫生,清除混乱和不礼貌现象。

During the National Civic Virtues Month all the cities must clean up, and banish disarray and discourtesy.

5 汉语的名词转换成英语的动词

在汉译英中,比较普遍的现象是汉语的动词转换成英语的名词。但也有相反情况,即汉语的名词转换为英语的动词。与此同时,原来修饰该名词的形容词也常随之而转换成英语的副词,作为状语来修饰由汉语名词转换成的英语动词。例如:

该厂产品的主要特点是工艺精湛、经久耐用。

The products of this Factory are chiefly characterized by their fine workmanship and durability.

她在最后的一幕里占了很突出的地位。

She figured prominently in the last act.

三、语态的转换(主动式与被动式的互换)

所谓语态变换,是指翻译中汉英两种语言之间的主动式与被动式的互换。我们知道,在汉语中被动式使用较少,我们叙述一种行为的时候,常用主动式。英语则不然,大量的及物动词可以用被动式,不少相当于及物动词的短语也可以用被动式、英语中使用被动式比汉语用得更多。例如:

我们的政策不光要使领导者知道、干部知道,还要使广大的群众知道。

Our policy must be made known not only to the leaders and to the cadres but also to the masses.

由此可见,汉语中的哪些句式可以用或者必须用英语被动式来表达,是研究语态变换

的主要问题。

当然，英语中被动语态的各种用法都有一定的理由，归纳起来主要包括：

- 第一，着重被动的动作；
- 第二，突出动作承受者（人或事物）的重要性；
- 第三，不知道或无须说出动作的执行者；
- 第四，有利于上下文的连贯、衔接。

这些理由也正是我们在汉译英时进行语态变换的重要依据。现在从以下几方面来谈。

（一）关于汉语被动句的英译问题

汉语的被动句子：从结构上来说大体可分为两类：一类带有表达被动意义的标记，另一类则不带有这种标记。常见的是后一类。不论哪一类，汉译英时基本上仍可运用被动语态。下面分别予以介绍。

1. 带有被动标记的汉语被动句

这类句子，一般表示较强的被动意义，着重于被动的动作。此类句子可按照汉语的习惯用法，相应地译成英语的被动句子。

她深受大家的尊敬。

She is greatly respected by everyone.

汉语这一类被动式，例如：使用助词“被、受、遭、给、挨、叫、让”等的，译为：窗上的玻璃叫那个孩子打破了，他肯定要挨骂的。

The window pane was broken by the child; he was doomed to be scolded.

有些被动句用“为……所”表达，如：

办公大楼为松树所环绕。

The office building is surrounded by pine trees.

该计划将由一个特别委员会加以审查。

The plan will be examined by a special committee.

3. 不带被动标记的汉语被动句

有些问题还需要澄清。

Certain questions have yet to be clarified.

（二）关于汉语主动句的英译问题

汉语多采用主动语态，但在汉译英时有时改用被动语态。语态的变换基于多种原因，概括来说主要包括：

1. 为了强调接受动作的人或事物的重要性

英语中，常常为了强调重要性，使句子之间的衔接紧密、自然而运用被动结构。为此目的，在汉译英时也常常将汉语的主动句改译为英语的被动句。请看以下例句：

我国各族人民每年都要热烈庆祝十月一日的国庆节。

National Day is enthusiastically celebrated on Oct. 1 by the Chinese people of all nationalities every year.

一群人立刻把他围住了，向他提出一个又一个的问题。

Very soon he was surrounded by a crowd and was snowed under with questions.

2. 为了加强上下文的连贯性

英语中，常常为了上下文的连贯性，使句子间的衔接紧密、自然而运用被动结构。为

此目的，在汉译英时也常常要将主动句子改译为英语的被动句。请看一下例句：

他出现在台上，观众给予热烈鼓掌。

He appeared on the stage and was warmly applauded by the audience.

口试时，问了 10 个问题，她全都答对了。

She was asked ten questions in the oral exam and every one of them Was correctly.

3. 为了使措辞得当、语气委婉

英语常出于礼貌上的考虑，不说出主事者，尤其是第一人称，因而采用被动语态。汉译英时也往往将汉语的主动语态转译成英语的被动语态，多见于讲话、通知、请帖等。例如：

请你给我们表演一个节目。

You are requested to give a performance.

来宾请出示入场券。

Visitors are requested to show their tickets.

(三) 关于汉语的一些习惯用语的译法

汉语中有许多习惯用语，其中有的是用“人们、有人、大家”等做主语，有的看来是无主语句，有的则是句子中的独立结构，如“据悉、应该说、必须指出、已经证明”等。汉语中的这类习惯用语，从语态上来说都是主动语态，但汉译英时通常都用被动语态，在表达方式上，则可充分利用英语中以 it 做形式主语的句型。例如：

应该说，情况基本上是健康的。

It should be said that the situation is basically sound.

很明显，这项计划应该取消。

It is obvious that the plan should be scrapped.

据谣传，那场事故是由于玩忽职守而造成的。

It is rumoured that the accident was due to negligence.

每日训练

1. 翻译下列各句，注意词的省译。

- 1) 我们必须培养分析问题、解决问题的能力。
- 2) 他一开口总是三句话不离本行。
- 3) 她的朋友们听到她家中的困难情况后，都主动伸出援助之手。
- 4) 每条河流都有上游、中游和下游。
- 5) 人们利用科学去了解自然、改造自然。
- 6) 我国少数民族有 3000 多万人。
- 7) 我昨天没进城，一来是因为天气不好，二来是因为我不舒服。
- 8) 他们是多年的邻居，一旦分别，不免依依不舍。
- 9) 他把事情一五一十地都跟父母讲了。
- 10) 他们是亲密无间的朋友。

2. 翻译下列各句，注意画线部分词类的转换。

- 1) 中国成功地爆炸了第一颗原子弹，在全世界引起了巨大的反响。
- 2) 思想交流是十分必要的。

- 3) 语言这个东西不是随便可以学好的, 非下苦工夫不可。
- 4) 事实上, 那个地区的和平遭到破坏, 正是他们的干涉所造成的。
- 5) 学医很艰苦, 成为一名医生需要很长的时间。
- 6) 方医生光明磊落, 待人平易, 热爱医学科学。
- 7) 地球的形状像一个大球。
- 8) 我国科学研究发展的特点是理论联系实际。
- 9) 我们觉得解决这个问题并不难。
- 10) 社会主义革命的目的是为了解放生产力。

3. 翻译下列各句, 注意运用语态变换的方法。

- 1) 关于这个问题, 已经说得很多了。
- 2) 请旅客在此填写报关表。
- 3) 刚才有人在这里讲了一些不该讲的话。
- 4) 那个孩子在街上玩, 一辆摩托车把他撞伤了。
- 5) 很抱歉, 因为雨太大了, 参观博物馆得推迟到明天了。
- 6) 认识到落后, 才能改变落后。
- 7) 我们的团结进一步加强了。
- 8) 缺点和错误必须克服。
- 9) 这篇文章需要再润色一下。
- 10) 他说的话使我感到莫名其妙。

4. 综合练习

- 1) 这一年来, 联合国忙于应付各项问题。这些问题范围之广前所未有的。就工作的时间、举行的会议或跋涉的旅程来说, 从来没有一年是这样忙、这样辛苦的。在一些极为困难的问题上, 联合国一年来取得了显著的进展。前几年开始出现的务实的作风已经收到了实际的成效, 联合国因此有机会展示能力、发挥潜力。
- 2) 美国人以两个特殊的日子向父母表示敬意: 这便是每年5月第2个星期日的母亲节和6月第3个星期日的父亲节。人们用各种形式来庆贺这两个特殊的日子。在母亲节那天, 人们佩戴康乃馨; 很多人还通过参加宗教仪式来向父母致意。
- 3) 今天, 享受教育的特权已不再限于极少部分人。教育的发展是如此之快, 它现在已成为一个大行业。事实上, 它是最大的行业, 其雇佣的人数和所付的工资比其他任何一个全国性的企业都要多。
- 4) 任何时候我们都必须坚持尊重社会发展规律与尊重人民历史主导地位的一致性, 坚持为崇高理想奋斗与为人民谋利益的一致性, 坚持完成党的各项工作与实现人民利益的一致性。
- 5) 第一代博物馆属于自然博物馆, 它是通过化石、标本等向人们介绍地球和各种生物的演化历史。第二代属于工业技术博物馆, 它所展示的是工业文明带来的各种阶段性结果。这两代博物馆虽然起到了传播科学知识的作用, 但是, 它们把参观者当成了被动的旁观者。第三代博物馆是充满全新理念的博物馆。在这里, 观众可以自己动手操作, 自己细心体察。这样, 他们可以更贴近先进的科学技术, 去探索科学技术的奥妙。
- 6) 只有在我过度劳累的时候, 在我长时间不间断地工作的时候, 在我感到内心空虚、需要充实的时候, 我才会感到寂寞。有时, 外出演讲回来, 见了许多人, 讲了许多话, 心中满是纷乱的体验需要整理, 偶而也会觉得孤独。于是有那么一会儿, 我会感到

整个房子非常大、空荡荡的。不知此时的自我又藏匿于何处。这时，我会给花草浇水，挨个瞅瞅，仿佛它们是活生生的人一样，或是喂喂两只小猫，亲手做顿饭菜，这样自我就慢慢地重新找回。



参考译文

1. 1) We must cultivate the ability to analyse and solve problems.
2) He can hardly open his mouth without talking shop.
3) When her friends heard about her family difficulties, they offered her a helping hand.
4) Every river has its upper, middle and lower reaches.
5) People use science to understand and change nature.
6) The minority nationalities in our country number more than thirty million.
7) I didn't go to town yesterday both because of the nasty weather and the fact that I was not feeling myself.
8) After being good neighbours for years, they can't bear to part from each other.
9) He told his parents the whole story exactly as it had happened.
10) They are close /bosom friends.
2. 1) China's successful explosion of its first atom bomb caused tremendous repercussions throughout the world.
2) Exchange of ideas is a vital necessity.
3) The mastery of language is not easy and requires painstaking effort.
4) In fact the destruction of peace in that region resulted from their intervention.
5) The study of medicine is very hard, and it takes a long time to become a doctor.
6) Open and aboveboard, Dr. Fang is a man of easy access and has a strong love for medical science.
7) The earth is shaped like a big ball.
8) The development of scientific research in our country is characterized by the combination of theory with practice.
9) We felt no difficulty in solving this problem.
10) Socialist revolution aims at liberating the productive forces.
3. 1) Much has been said on this question.
2) Passengers are requested to fill in the customs declaration form here.
3) Some things were said here just now which should not have been said.
4) The boy playing in the street was injured by a motorcycle.
5) I'm sorry to say the visit to the museum has to be put off till tomorrow because of the heavy rain.
6) The backwardness must be perceived before it can be changed.
7) Our unity has been further strengthened.
8) Shortcomings and mistakes must be overcome.
9) This article needs polishing. Or: This article has yet to be polished.
10) I was perplexed by what he (had) said.
4. 1) In the past year the United Nations has been actively engaged in an unprecedented

wide range of problems. In terms of hours worked, meetings held or journeys made, there has never been a more active or more arduous year. The Organization has achieved notable progress this year on some extremely difficult problems. The pragmatic and realistic approach which has begun to emerge over the last few years has resulted in practical results which provide an opportunity for the Organization to show its potential and to develop its capacity.

- 2) Americans pay respects to their parents with two special days: Mother's Day on the second Sunday in May and Father's Day on the third Sunday in June. They celebrate them in various ways. For example, they wear carnation on Mother's day, and attend religious rituals as well to show their respects.
- 3) Today, the privilege of receiving education is not confined to the few people. This industry has been developing so fast that it has become a major one, and in fact, it is the biggest one today, which are employing more people and paying more than any other national industry.
- 4) All of us must adhere at any time to the consistency of the respect to the law of social development and the dominant status of people in history, the struggle for the lofty ideal and pursuit of the masses' interest, the fulfillment of the tasks of the Party and the realization of people's interests.
- 5) The first generation of museums are what might be called natural museums which, by means of fossils, specimens and other objects, introduced to people the evolutionary history of the Earth and various kinds of organisms. The second generation are those of industrial technologies which presented the fruits achieved by industrial civilization at different stages of industrialization. Despite the fact that those two generations of museums helped to disseminate / propagate / spread scientific knowledge, they nevertheless treated visitors merely as passive viewers. The third generation of museums in the world are those replete with / full of wholly novel concepts. In those museums, visitors are allowed to operate the exhibits with their own hands, to observe and to experience carefully. By getting closer to the advanced science and technologies in this way, people can probe into their secret mysteries.
- 6) I am lonely only when I am overtired, when I have worked too long without a break, when for the time being I feel empty and need filling up. And I am lonely sometimes when I come back home after a lecture trip, when I have seen a lot of people and talked a lot, and am full to the brim with experience that needs to be sorted out. Then for a little while the house feels huge and empty, and I wonder where myself is hiding. It has to be recaptured slowly by watering the plants, perhaps, and looking again at each one as though it were a person, by feeding the two cats, by cooking a meal.

汉译英解题技巧（三）

语序的变换、正说与反说

一、语序变换

汉译英时，原文的句子成分和词语的先后顺序，必须按照英语的语序习惯重新安排，而不可照搬。原文中的某一语序在译文中变换成另一种语序，这叫做语序的变换。

汉语和英语的语序有时也有相同之处。遇到这种情况，翻译时可按原文语序排列句子成分，这里无须赘述。下面举例说明语序相异时如何进行语序变换的几种情况。

（一）定语位置的变换

在汉译英时，定语位置的变换是一个相当复杂的问题。要不要变换以及如何变换，应根据英语的语序习惯来决定。以下从四个方面来介绍。

1. 汉语中的定语

汉语中的定语无论是单用还是几个连用，通常都放在所修饰的名词前面。英语则不然，单词做定语时，一般放在所修饰的名词之前，短语和从句做定语时则放在所修饰的名词之后。汉语的定语译成英语时，有的可能是单词，有的可能是短语，有的可能是从句。怎样安排？前置还是后置？这就要依照英语的习惯来处理。例如：

农林牧副渔布局合理、全面发展、能够满足人民生活 and 工业发展需要的发达的农业。

A developed agricultural system with a rational distribution and, all round development of farming; forestry, animal husbandry, sideline occupations and fisheries meeting the needs of the people and of an expanding industry.

2. 单词做定语时的位置

汉译英时英语的单词定语并不是无例外地全部放在所修饰的名词之前。在下面一些特殊情况下，单词做定语可以甚至必须放在所修饰的名词之后。

（1）单词定语所修饰的名词是由 **some, any, every, no** 等构成的复合词时，定语可后置。例如：

今天的报纸上有条重要新闻。

There is something important in today's newspaper.

医生为救病人，尽到了一切必要的努力。

The doctor did everything necessary to save the patient.

他想找个可靠的人帮忙做这项工作。

He wanted to get someone reliable to help in this work.

(2) 通常做表语用的形容词，用做定语时必须后置。例如：

他是参加过这次罢工还活着的少数工人之一。

He is one of the few workers alive today who took part in the strike.

到场的来宾中有一些外国记者。

The guests present included few foreign newsmen.

(3) 在某些固定词组中，单个形容词用做定语时，习惯上放在所修饰的词后面。例如：

军事法庭 Court Martial

(联合国) 秘书长 Secretary-General (of the U. N.)

(世界卫生组织) 总干事 Director-General (of the WHO)

(4) 某些以-ible 或-able 结尾的形容词用做定语，与 every, the only 或形容词最高级连用来修饰一个名词时，也常放在所修饰的名词之后。例如：

我们一定要用一切可能的办法来帮助他们。

We must help them in every way possible.

(We must help them in every possible way.)

(5) 某些分词用做定语时，也须后置。例如：

他们收下了赠送的礼物，十分高兴。

They were very glad to have accepted the presents offered.

那些唱歌的人大部分是妇女。

Most of the people singing were women.

(6) 某些表示位置、方向的副词用做定语时，往往也放在所修饰的名词之后。例如：

现在这里居民的生活很幸福。

Dwellers here live a happy life now.

于是雨水会肆无忌惮地冲向下面的山谷。

Then rain waters can rush unchecked to the valley below.

3. 英语中的定语

英语有时把一系列的单词定语放在所修饰的名词之前，但其顺序与汉语不尽相同，往往需要作适当的调整。在汉语中，几个定语连用时，习惯上是把最能表明事物本质的放在最前面，而把表示规模大小、力量强弱的放在后面。英语则往往与此相反，越是能表示事物基本性质的定语越要靠近它所修饰的名词。再者，往往根据定语和它所修饰的名词之间的关系来安排前后位置；定语和中心词关系愈密切，位置愈接近。如果关系远近难分，则按词的长短排列，短的在前，长的在后。另外，在一连串定语中，如有代词，则总是放在最前面，而代词中的 all, both 又总是放在其他代词之前。所以，汉译英时，要按英语的习惯顺序仔细斟酌排列。例如：

国际经济新秩序 a new international economic order

一位朝鲜的青年舞蹈家 a young Korean dancer

几千朵美丽的红玫瑰 thousands of red beautiful roses

一张木制小圆桌 a small round wooden table

一位美国现代优秀作家 an outstanding contemporary American writer

4. 同位语的位置

同位语在翻译中也可以当做一种定语来处理，同位语的位置在汉英两种语言中有同有异。英语中的同位语一般都跟在中心名词之后。汉语则比较复杂，有的在中心名词之前，有的在中心名词之后。位于以代词为中心词之后的同位语，译成英语时一般都保持原结构、

原语序。例如：

我们共产党人 we communists

他们全体 they all

我们热烈欢迎你们，各条战线上的先进工作者们，来参加这次大会。

We warmly welcome you, advanced workers from various fronts, to the conference.

而位于中心名词之前的同位语，译成英语时，语序上大半都要发生变化，即将同位语移在中心名词之后。例如：

这是我们医院的院长周先生。

This is Mr. Zhou, director of our hospital.

（二）状语位置的变换

汉译英时，状语位置的变换极为复杂。因为汉英两种语言的状语位置差别较大，而且汉英两种语言中，状语的位置都不那么固定，出于强调的程度、句子的平衡和上下文的关联等方面的考虑，状语的位置会发生一些变化。因此，在翻译时首先要熟悉汉英两种语言状语位置的差异，然后按英语的习惯来调整安排。这里仅就以下两个方面加以介绍。

1. 汉语中状语通常放在主语之后、谓语之前，但有时为了强调可放在主语之前。英语中状语的位置则十分复杂，汉译英时，译文中的状语须依照英语语法和惯用法来安排。例如：

病人整天在睡眠当中辗转反侧。

The patient tossed about in his sleep all day.

2. 汉语句子里如有一系列状语，译成英语时，它们的顺序要按照英语的排列习惯加以变动：

（1）汉语句子中同时含有时间状语和地点状语时，时间状语一般放在地点状语之前。英语与此相反，通常把时间状语放在地点状语之后。例如：

大会将于今年九月在北京隆重开幕。

The meeting will begin ceremoniously in Beijing the following September.

这部电影我是去年夏天在武汉看的。

I saw the movie in Wuhan last summer.

（2）除了地点状语和时间状语外，如果还有方式状语，在汉语里的顺序通常是：时间、地点、方式。而在英语里的顺序一般是：方式、地点、时间。例如：

她每天早晨在室外高声朗读。

She reads aloud in the open every morning.

我们上星期天在她家饱餐了一顿。

We ate to our hearts' content at her home last Sunday.

（3）同一个句子里如果有两个以上的时间状语或地点状语，汉语一般是把代表较小单位的状语放得靠后一些，把代表较大单位的状语放得靠前一些。英语的习得则恰恰相反，汉译英时需要变换其位置。例如：

设在位于纽约市中心一座摩天大楼第40层楼里的那间办公室，就是他工作的小天地。

The office on the fortieth floor of a skyscraper in the center of New York City is the world he works in.

（三）其他句子成分和词语位置的变换

汉译英时，需要变换位置的不限于定语和状语，其他句子成分和一些词语的位置也要

按照英文的习惯作适当的调整和变换。

1. 一个句子中有几个并列的词语时，其含义常有轻重强弱之分。

汉语的位置排列，一般是把重的、强的词语放在前面，把轻的、弱的词语放在后面。英语则恰巧相反，越是重的、强的，越要放在后面。翻译时就得依照英语的排列法变换其位置。例如：

救死扶伤，实行革命的人道主义。

Heal the wounded, rescue the dying, and practise revolutionary humanitarianism.

我们一方面取之于民，一方面就要使人民在经济上有所增长。

While taking from the people we must at the same time help them to replenish and expand their economy.

2. 英语表达比较注重逻辑关系。

在汉译英时，遇到原文中逻辑关系安排先后与英语习惯不同者，往往需要从所描述的事情和行为发生的时间以及它们的因果关系来考虑，调整译文中句子成分和某些词语的次序。例如：

眼疾手快 quick of eye and deft of hand

从逻辑上讲，总是先看见后动手，故在译文中调换了次序。

3. 汉英两种语言中，都有一些并列结构的词语，已经形成各自固定的语序，互不相同。

在翻译这些并列结构的词语时，须遵从英文的惯例，进行必要的调整，不可受原文的束缚。现举例说明如下：

1) 汉语习惯说“钢铁”，而英语则常把 iron 放在前，把 steel 放在后。例如：

钢铁工业 the iron and steel industry

2) 汉语习惯说“敌我”，而英语却常把 ourselves 放在前，把 the enemy 放在后。汉语习惯说“你和我”，而英语却常说“我和你”怎么怎么样。例如：

敌我矛盾 contradictions between ourselves and the enemy

一定要分清敌我。

We must draw a clear distinction between ourselves and the enemy.

3) 汉语习惯说“衣食”，但英语则常把 food 放在 clothing 之前。例如：

衣食住行 food, clothing, shelter and transportation

4) 汉语习惯说“南北”、“西南”、“东北”，而英语则说：north and south, south-west, north-east。

二、正说与反说

人们在叙述同一事物或表达同一思想时，可以正说，也可以反说。汉语如此，英语也如此。在翻译时，对原文某个词语或句子，在译文中既可采用正说，也可采用反说。例如：黄鼠狼给鸡拜年，不怀好心。（反说；译文可反说，也可正说。）

The weasel goes to pay respects to the hen not with the best of intentions.

The weasel pays a courtesy visit to the hen with evil intent.

他的解释不能让人满意。（反说；译文可正说。）

His explanation is far from satisfactory.

他虽然贫穷，但无论如何也不会说谎。（反说；译文可正说。）

Poor as he was, he was above telling a lie in any case.

汉译英中，正说与反说互相转换的现象很多，转换的原因主要有列三种：

1. 汉英两种语言的习惯用法不同

1) 油漆未干 Wet Paint

这是一句招贴用语。搭配“油漆”一词，汉语习惯用“未干”，而英语却习惯用 wet 搭配 paint。用意相同，表达各异。如果汉语说成“湿的油漆”，英语说成 Paint Not Dry，就都不合乎各自的习惯用法了。

2) 在他还没来得及阻拦我之前，我已经跑出教室。

Before he could stop me, I had rushed out of the classroom.

3) 在收据尚未签字以前不得付款。

Before the receipt has been signed, the money must not be paid.

按照汉语的习惯可以说“在……没有……以前”，但是这种说法在英语中不合乎习惯，上面两句如果分别译成 Before he could not stop me 和 Before the receipt has not been signed，就使人无法理解了。

4) 俗话说，“男儿有泪不轻弹，皆因未到伤心处”嘛。

As the saying goes, “Men only weep when deeply hurt”。此句也可按反说译为：

As the saying goes, “Men never weep unless they are deeply hurt.”

5) 如果没有他的帮助，我早就失败了。

But for his help, I should have failed.

2. 为了加强语气以便获得较好的修辞效果

我们讨论问题时，不能忘记这些基本观点。

These basic concepts must be kept in mind in our discussion.

今日我们只要走几步路，就一定会注意到两旁的广告。

Today we cannot walk a few steps without noticing advertisements on both sides of the road.

3. 为了更加确切地表达原文含义

正如没经历过大事的人一样，他是经不起成功，也经不起失败的。

Like those of little experience he was easily elated by success and deflated by failure.

译文把“经不起”一语转换成正说，而且具体化了。

她只好把行李卷铺开在地上，决心熬过这一晚。

She had no choice but to spread her bedroll on the floor and resolve that she would somehow get through this one night.

从以上译例中，我们可以看出，在汉译英时，为了正确处理正说和反说的转换，可以灵活地变换句型，也可以利用反义词。此外，英语中有许多含有否定或半否定语气的词语，在翻译中可充分利用，以便使译文符合英语习惯，并使句子结构多样化。

1. 英语中含否定语气的词语

(1) 动词：fail, miss, lack, ignore, refuse, withhold, refrain (from), neglect, deny, overlook, exclude 等。例如：

使我们失望的是他不顾大局。

To our disappointment, he failed to take the overall situation into account.

他上火车站去接他的朋友，可是未能在人群中见到他。

He went to the station to meet his friend but he missed him in the crowd.

他看了看桌子上的点心，摇了摇头，一点也不吃。

He ran his eyes over the refreshments on the table but shook his head and refused to touch anything.

如果彼得不用心学习，他考试还会不及格。

Peter will fail in the exam again unless he concentrates on his study.

(2) 名词: **absence, failure, refusal, ignorance, neglect, exclusion** 等, 例如:

他开车时心不在焉, 几乎闯祸。

His absence of mind during the driving nearly caused an accident.

我们完全不知道他的计划。

We are in complete ignorance of his plan.

他未能履行诺言, 我们大家都失望。

His failure to carry out his promise has disappointed everyone of us.

(3) 形容词和形容词短语: **few, little, free from, far from, safe from, short of** 等。例如:

这次演出根本没有失败, 而是十分成功。

The show was far from being a failure; it was a great success.

他的作文中几乎没有语法错误。

There are few grammatical mistakes in his composition.

据悉敌军给养不足。

It is reported that the enemy troops are short of supplies.

(4) 副词和副词短语: **little, otherwise, too... to...** 等。例如:

他显然有不同的想法。

He evidently thinks otherwise.

我根本不知道他会遇到什么麻烦。

I little knew what trouble he was going to have.

他兴奋得说不出话来了。

He was too excited to speak.

(5) 连词: **unless, before, until (rather) than, or** 等。例如:

不了解这一点, 就不能得到起码的知识。

Unless we grasp this point we shall never be able to acquire even elementary knowledge.

他宁愿饿死, 也不愿行窃。

He will die of hunger before he steals.

部队宁可绕道走, 也不踩庄稼。

The troops would rather take a roundabout way than tread on the crops.

快一点, 否则你就要迟到了。

Hurry up, or you'll be late.

(6) 介词和介词短语: **without, above, except, beyond, instead of, in place of, out of** 等。例如:

他的行为举止是赞扬不尽的。

His behavior is above praise.

要不是你帮忙, 那个任务我是无法按时完成的。

Without your help, I could not have fulfilled the task in time.

绅士生而是之，并非学而为之。

A gentleman is, rather than does.

2. 英语中含有半否定语气的词

有 seldom, hardly, barely, scarcely, rarely 等。例如：

工作没有经验，出点差错，几乎是不可避免的。

Slips are scarcely avoidable when you're new to your work.

那些黑人挣到的钱几乎不够养家糊口。

The Negroes barely earn enough money to keep their families alive.

他饿得虚弱无力，连骨瘦如柴的胳膊都举不起来。

He was so weak from hunger he could hardly raise his meagre arms.

我经常听到人们说，时间就是金钱。

I hear it not seldom said that time is money.

每日训练

1. 翻译下列各句，注意画线部分在句中的位置。

- 1) 他们最近的成就表明他们所取得的巨大进步。
- 2) 你最好还是询问那消息灵通人士。
- 3) 公报谈到双方在所讨论的一切问题上都取得了一致的意见。
- 4) 这是再好没有的东西。
- 5) 他是当时唯一醒着的人。
- 6) 我们必须清楚了解所有牵涉到的问题。
- 7) 他是中国 古代文学家之一。
- 8) 他穿过马路时，左顾右盼，害怕撞到过路的车子上。
- 9) 他们的部队水陆并进，及时抵达前线。
- 10) 不论晴雨，我们明天非去不可。

2. 翻译下列各句，注意恰当运用正说与反说的技巧。

- 1) 他又不出声了。
- 2) 日子很快过去了，她做工却丝毫没有松懈。
- 3) 我很高兴看见你安然无恙。
- 4) 他们的供应不足，冬季又将来临。
- 5) 他不自然地咳了起来。
- 6) 他只顾自己，不顾别人，使得大家都很生气。
- 7) 是重力使我们不至于从地球上抛出去。
- 8) 他下意识地举起手来搔他的头顶。
- 9) 她只觉得头晕眼花，辨不出路径。
- 10) 他的暗示没有引起我的注意。

3. 综合练习

- 1) 我相信，中国加入世贸组织后，外商参与中国投资活动的机会将越来越多，自身发展的空间也越来越大。
- 2) 在基因治疗普及之前，仍然需要作大量研究。如果许多疾病真的可以治疗的话，那

将花上数十年的时间。

- 3) 许多美国企业，尤其是飞机和其他高价值工业的机械和设备制造商坚持认为，这些法规对抵制欧盟实施的经 WTO 批准的出口增值税退税来说是必要的。
- 4) 人类最大的谬误是，以为社会和政治问题简单得很，所以根本不需要科学方法的严格训练，而只要根据实际经验就可以判断，就可以解决。但是事实却恰好相反。
- 5) 这样充分运用人的聪明智慧来寻求真理，来控制自然，来改变物质以供人用，来使人的身体免除不必要的辛劳痛苦，来使人的精神从愚昧、迷信里解放出来，这样的文明是真正的精神文明。
- 6) 长城，东起山海关，西至嘉峪关，横跨中国北部，全长六千多公里，号称“万里长城”，是中国古代劳动人民智慧的结晶，是世界伟大的建筑奇迹之一。中国最早的长城，远在公元前 7 世纪就已经出现了。公元前 221 年，秦始皇统一六国后，把秦、赵、燕三国原有长城连接起来，绵延万余里，奠定今天长城的规模，以后历代均有修筑。现存长城，是明代修建的。长城依山势蜿蜒起伏，宛如苍龙凌空飞舞，十分雄伟壮观，是无数中外游人的登临胜地。
- 7) 比“文明”这个词还用得更不确切、更加无拘无束的词简直寥寥无几。文明是什么意思？它意指一个建立在平民百姓舆论基础上的社会。它意味着暴力、武士和暴君的统治、战争冲突、暴动暴政为立法议会所取代，被法律得以长期维护的独立法庭所代替。这就是文明，在文明的土壤里，自由、舒适和文化不断发展壮大。如果文明在任何一个国家里占了支配地位，那么便可给人民群众提供一种更加宽松的较为平静的生活，过去的传统则受人珍重，英明伟人或勇士们留给我们的遗产则成为咱们大家共同享用的丰富的财产。



参考译文

1. 1) Their recent achievements showed the great progress made.
2) You had better ask those better informed.
3) The communiqué said that the two sides had unanimous views on all problems discussed.
4) It is the best thing imaginable.
5) He was the only person awake at the moment.
6) We must have a clear idea of all the problems involved.
7) He was one of the ancient Chinese writers.
8) While crossing the street, he looked right and left, afraid that he might run into some passing car.
9) Their troops advanced by both land and water, and arrived at the front in time.
10) Rain or shine, we'll have to go tomorrow.
2. 1) Again he lapsed into silence.
2) The days passed quickly, but she worked as hard as ever.
3) I am glad to see you safe and sound.
4) Their supply line was thin and winter was coming on.
5) He coughed with embarrassment.
6) His lack of consideration for the feelings of others angered everyone present.
7) It is gravity that keeps us from falling off the earth.
8) He involuntarily raised his hand to scratch his head.

- 9) She felt too dizzy to remember the way she had come.
- 10) His hint escaped me.
3. 1) I believe that, after China's entry into WTO, more opportunities will be created for the participation of foreign entrepreneurs in the investment activities in China and larger space for their own development.
- 2) Much more research is needed before gene therapy becomes commonplace. And many diseases will take decades to conquer, if they can be conquered at all.
- 3) Many American enterprises, especially the manufacturers of the air industry and other high-interest machinery and equipment industries, insist that these rules are essential to resist the drawback of export value-added tax issued by the EU and sanctified by WTO.
- 4) The biggest fallacy/myth held by human beings is that social and political problems are very simple and can be judged and solved just by their actual experience rather than by the strict training of scientific methods. But the reality is just the opposite.
- 5) This is the real civilization under which people can make full use of their wisdom and intelligence to seek the truth, control the nature, change matters for man's use, to relieve people from the unnecessary tortures and pains, and to set people's spiritual life free from ignorance and superstitions.
- 6) Starting at Shanhai Pass in the east and ending up at Jiayu Pass in the west, the Great Wall traverses up and down over numerous mountains and valleys in five of China's northern provinces and two autonomous regions. As it extends over a distance of more than 6,000 kms, it is called in Chinese the Wanlichangcheng which means "Ten Thousand Li Long Wall". It is a symbol of intelligence of the working people of old days, and also one of the great architectural miracles in the world. Construction of the wall first began in the 7th century B. C. after Qin Shi Huang, the first emperor of the Qin Dynasty (221 — 206 B. C.) achieved the unification of China in 221 B. C. He had the fortification walls of the three kingdoms Qin, Zhao and Yan linked up to be a continuous wall extending more than ten thousand li (a li = 1/2 kms), which formed the essential size of the present-day Great Wall. Since then the later dynasties continued to repair and build the wall. The great wall as it stands today was restored and reinforced during the Ming Dynasty. The great Wall winds like a giant serpent along the lofty myriad mountains. It is one of the most famous attractions to visitors.
- 7) There are few words which are used more loosely than the word "civilization". What does it mean? It means a society based upon the opinion of civilians. It means that violence, the rule of warriors and despotic chiefs, the conditions of camps and warfare, of riot and tyranny, give place to parliaments where laws are made, and independent courts of justice in which over long periods those laws are maintained. That is Civilization — and in its soil grow continually freedom, comfort and culture. When Civilization reigns in any country, a wider and less harassed life is afforded to the masses of the people, the traditions of the past are cherished, and the inheritance bequeathed to us by former wise or valiant men becomes a rich estate to be enjoyed and used by all.

星期五

汉译英解题技巧（四）

省略句、否定句、倒装句的译法

一、省略句的译法

使用语言不仅要求正确、通顺，而且要求简明。“言以简洁为贵”（Brevity is the soul of wit.）这句名言应当成为我们说话、写文章和翻译的准则。为了简洁就常常需要省略句子中的某些成分，这就是省略句形成的原因。

汉语和英语一样，均有省略句。省略句是同完全句“具备应有的主语、谓语、宾语等成分的句子”相比较而言的。缺少一个或一个以上成分的句子，均叫省略句。省略句所缺少的成分一般可以补出。句子成分的省略必须基于一定的语言环境。汉语的省略句通常以下语言环境中使用：一是对话；二是上文中提到的；三是下文中将要说到；四是祈使句；五是各分句中主语相同的复句；六是包括随笔、日记或书信等的自叙文。英语的省略句大体上说也是在上述语言环境中使用，但第三种语言环境不适用于英语的省略句。

汉英省略句中被省略的成分有时相同，有时不同，有时只有局部相同。省略成分相同时，译成英语后没有必要补出被省略的成分；省略成分不同时，就必须根据英语的习惯补出被省略的成分；省略成分局部相同时，情况就比较复杂，有时英语的省略范围窄，汉译英时须多补出一些词，有时英语的省略范围广，汉译英时则可以多省略一些词。

现举例说明把汉语省略句翻译为英文的一些方法。

（一）在译文中补充某些句子成分

1. 补充主语

汉语句子中的主语在对话中可以推断出来或在上文中已经提到时往往被省略。但是英语句子的主语一般不能省略，特别是在书面语中，句子通常必须有主语。汉译英时，须按照英语的习惯补充主语。例如：

鲁四凤：哼，妈不像您，见钱就忘了命。

Feng: Humph! Mother isn't like you—show you a handful of coppers and you'll break your neck to get it.

原文句中省略的主语，是后一句中的宾语“您”。

2. 补充宾语

汉语句子中的宾语，如果上文中已经提到或者在听者心目中已明确，往往会省略，但译成英语时则必须补出，因为英语句子的宾语一般不能单独省略，英语的及物动词必须有宾语。例如：

她找着了就送过来。

If she finds it, she'll send it to you.

在原文里说话人和听话人双方都知道所指的对象，故省略了宾语，但是翻译为英文时通常要补出。

（二）在译文中省略某些句子成分

1. 省去主语

（1）在对话中，汉语句子里的主语往往被省略，汉译英时，某些英语句子的主语同样，也可以按英语的习惯予以省略。例如：

（我）谢谢你。

Thank you.

（她）一定是个专家什么的。

(She) Must be an expert or something.

（2）有时汉语句子的主语因为在前面刚提到而被省略了，译成英语时也可不必补出。例如：

我不要亮，我讨厌亮，（它）太刺眼了！

I don't want the light. I hate it. It gets on my nerves. / (It) Hurts my eyes.

2. 省略某些动词的宾语

在少数情况下，省略宾语的汉语句子，译成英语以后也可以省略宾语。例如：

——你们什么时候才能完成这项工作？

——嗯，很难说。

— When will you be able to finish the work?

— Well, it's hard to tell (it).

二、否定句的译法

汉语和英语在否定句的习惯用法和表达形式上存在许多差异，在汉译英时要注意不要一味以中国人的思维方式和习惯用法去翻译英语，而要充分考虑译入语的习惯，使译文更加符合“信、达、雅”的标准。

汉语和英语中的否定都可以分为部分否定、完全否定和双重否定三种。汉语中表示完全否定的词语有“不、绝不、绝对不会、没有、根本没有、根本不、完全不、否则、不是、毫无、非、未、无”等；表示部分否定的词语通常有“并非所有的……都……、几乎没有、不是每个都、不是两个都、不总是、几乎不、不怎么”等；表示双重否定的词语有“非……不……、非……莫……、不……没有”等。

1 汉语的否定句译成英语的否定句

一般来说，汉语的否定句在译成英语时，仍可以是否定句。

科学家们认为，计算机不可能在所有领域中都代替人。

Scientists do not believe that computers can replace man in every field.

他的设计肯定还没完成。

He can't have completed his design.

我们相信他们是不会反对你的建议的。

I don't believe that they will oppose your proposal.

分析：在复合句中的否定，汉语和英语的表达方式也是不同的，汉语的否定词在谓语从句中，英语的否定词在谓语主句中。这类句子通常用的动词为 believe, consider, expect, fancy, fear, hope, feel, imagine, suppose, think, trust 等表示心理活动的动词。

2 汉语的否定句译成英语的肯定句

英语中有很多词是含有否定意义的词，所以在汉译英时，内容是否定的中文句子可以翻译成形式上是否定的英文句子。英语中常见的含否定意义的词语有：

1) 含否定意义的动词有：fail, lack, exclude, refuse, reject, neglect, deny, overlook, withhold, miss, forbid, forget, hesitate, wonder, lose, ignore, escape, resist, decline, doubt, deprive, refrain (from), free from, keep away from, save from, protect from, prevent from, stop from, persuade from 等。

2) 含否定意义的名词有：ignorance, failure, absence, refusal, neglect 等。

3) 含否定意义的形容词有：few, little, free from, short of, far from 等。

4) 含否定意义的副词和副词短语有：little, otherwise, too ... to ... , in vain 等。

5) 含半否定意义的副词有：hardly, scarcely, barely, rarely, seldom 等。

6) 含否定意义的连词有：unless, before, until, or 等。

7) 含否定意义的介词和介词短语有：without, beyond, above, against, except, but, past, instead of, in place of, out of, but for 等。

在了解了上述含否定意义的词之后，我们在翻译汉语否定句时，就经常可以用表面肯定的英语句子来表达内容否定的意思了。比如：

你最好工作，不要浪费时间浪费掉。

You'd better work instead of wasting your time. (充分利用含否定意义的介词短语)

他们不准我参加这个节目。

They excluded me from taking part in this program. (充分利用含否定意义的动词)

他的文章几乎没有拼写错误。

There are few spelling mistakes in his paper. (充分利用含否定意义的形容词)

他显然有不同的想法。

He obviously thinks otherwise. (充分利用含否定意义的副词)

我下指令，你们就别开始。

Don't start unless I give you the order. (充分利用含否定意义的连词)

他写作不行。

He's a failure as a writer. (充分利用含否定意义的名词)

掌握一些固定的、内容上表示否定而形式上表示肯定的英语句型，在汉译英时会让学生脱颖而出。比如：

这项任务根本不容易。

This task was anything but easy. (“be + anything but + 名词/形容词”的结构是一种语气很强的否定表达方式，意思为“根本不”、“一点也不”。)

张家界景色之美非笔墨所能形容。

The beauty of Zhangjiajie is more than I can describe. (“more than + 含有 can”的从句表面是超出限度，实际上是一种力所不能及的否定，意思为“不能”。)

你英语掌握得这么好，不该犯这样的错误。

You have a better command of English than to make such mistakes. (“形容词或副词的比较级 + than to do” 结构在某些条件下蕴含着某种因果关系。当比较级表示原因，than 后的不定式表示结果时，则含有强烈的否定意思。)

3 汉语的部分否定句译成英语的部分否定句

汉语中表示部分否定的词语“并非所有的……都……、几乎没有、不是每个都、不是两个都、不总是、几乎不、不怎么”，在译成英文时通常会用到具有全体意义的代词和副词，如 all, every, both, always, altogether, entirely 等的否定结构。例如：

并非人人都能做这些试验。

Every one cannot do these tests.

= Not everyone can do these tests.

并非供给热机的所有热量都被转变为有用的功。

All of the heat supplied to the engine is not converted into useful work.

= Not all of the heat supplied to the engine is converted into useful work.

这两种花我并非都喜欢。

I do not like both of the flowers.

并非所有领导都出席了。

Not all leaders were present.

4 汉语的双重否定句在译成英语时

(1) 可以是肯定句

听到这个消息后，没有一个人不感到兴奋。

Having heard the news, everybody felt excited. (肯定句)

我绝不否认这个项目。

I would be the last person in the world to deny this project. (the last person 和 deny 都是含否定意义的词，共同出现时，表示肯定。)

(2) 可以是否定句

不做这件事是不可能的。

It is impossible not to do it.

我们不得不读书以增长知识。

We cannot but read books to increase our knowledge. (“否定词 + but” 的结构，but 当做关系代词用，相当于 “which/who/that ... not ...”，具有否定的含义。)

这不是不可能的。

This is not impossible.

(3) 可以是双重否定句

没有足够的加速度，地球卫星是不能进入太空的。

The earth satellite would not get into space without enough acceleration.

没有调查，就没有发言权。

No investigation, no say.

巧妇难为无米之炊。

You can't make something out of nothing.

三、倒装句的译法

(一) 部分倒装

部分倒装是指将谓语的一部分成分，如情态动词或助动词倒装至主语之前。如果句子的谓语没有情态动词或助动词，则需要添加助动词 do, does 或 did，并将其置于主语之前。常见的情形有以下几种：

具有否定意义的词或否定短语在句首，句子需要部分倒装。例如：little, never, not, no, hardly, rarely, seldom, scarcely, not until, no sooner ... than ... , not only ... but also ... , nowhere, etc. 例如：

他不仅拒收了礼品，还狠狠批评了送礼的人。

正常语序：He not only refused the gift, he also severely criticized the sender.

部分倒装：Not only did he refuse the gift, he also severely criticized the sender.

中国在任何时候，在任何情况下，都不首先使用核武器。

正常语序：China will be the first to use nuclear weapons at no time and under no circumstances.

部分倒装：At no time and under no circumstances will China be the first to use nuclear weapons.

那时，我几乎不懂他对我说的话。

正常语序：I understood little what he said to me at that time.

部分倒装：Little did I understand what he said to me at that time.

直到我开始工作才意识到我浪费了多少时间。

正常语序：I did not realize how much time I had wasted until I began to work.

部分倒装：Not until I began to work did I realize how much time I had wasted.

你在哪儿都不会找到这个问题的答案。

正常语序：You will find the answer to this question nowhere.

部分倒装：Nowhere will you find the answer to this question.

我一到家，天就下起雨来。

正常语序：I had no sooner reached home than it began to rain.

部分倒装：No sooner had I reached home than it began to rain.

小偷一看见警察就跑了。

正常语序：The thief had hardly seen the policeman when he ran away.

= The thief had scarcely seen the policeman before he ran away.

部分倒装：Hardly had the thief seen the policeman when he ran away.

= Scarcely had the thief seen the policeman before he ran away.

他们不仅带了小吃和饮料，还带了娱乐牌。

正常语序：They not only brought snacks and drinks, but they also brought cards for entertainment.

部分倒装：Not only did they bring snacks and drinks, but they also brought cards for entertainment.

Only + 状语（即副词、介词短语或从句）放在句首时，主句部分倒装。例如：
只有那时我才意识到教育的重要性。

Only then did I realize the importance of education.

只有当你到达山顶，才能看见那个美丽的村庄。

Only when you reach the top of mountain, can you see the beautiful village.

在含有 were, had, should 的虚拟条件状语中，如果省去 if，条件状语须用倒装结构。例如：

Were he to start right now, he would finish next Monday.

原句为：If he were to start right now, he would finish next Monday.

Had you studied harder, you would have got better result.

原句为：If you had studied harder, you would have got better result.

Should it rain, the crops would be saved. = Were it to rain, the crops would be saved.

原句为：If it should（或 were to）rain, the crops would be saved.

副词 so + 形容词或副词 + that 从句，so 在句首时，主句倒装，that 从句不倒装。例如：

So cold was the weather that we had to stay at home.

天气太冷，我们只好待在家里。

So delicious does Mary cook that all the kids like to eat at her home.

玛丽做饭很好吃，所有的孩子都喜欢在她家吃饭。

So warm was the house that we didn't want to get out for work.

房里很暖和，我们都不想出去上班了。

代词 so, neither, nor, no more 在句首，表示前面提出的某一情况也同样适合于后者，通常就要用“代词 + 助动词 + 主语”这种倒装结构。例如：

— It's scorching hot today, isn't it?

— Yes. So was it yesterday.

— I don't like this dish, do you?

— No. Neither do I.

— Lucy can't dance.

— Nor can Lily.

（二）全部倒装

主语与谓语交换位置时不需要加任何助动词，是为全部倒装。全部倒装有以下几种情况：

1. 以介词开头的地点状语位于句首时，用全部倒装。例如：

Ahead sat a beautiful girl. 前面坐了一个漂亮的女孩子。

By her side lied her dog. 她的身边躺着她的狗。

Under the window grew the flower. 花儿开在窗台下。

Out rushed a boy. 跑出一个男孩。

Under the tree sat an old man. 树下坐着一个老人。

2. 当 here, there, out, in, up, down, then, thus, away, now, along 等副词放在句首时，句子需全部倒装。例如：

In came the students, bags on shoulders. 学生们背着书包进来了。
 Just then along came Jim. 就在这时，吉姆来了。
 Here is your letter. 给你信。
 Then came the general manager. 总经理来了。
 There goes the bell! 铃响了!

每日训练

1. 将下列汉语省略句译成英语省略句。

- 1) 怎么啦？小伙子！找了个对象没有？
- 2) — 今天好多了吗？
— 好多了。
- 3) — 老王买了一架电视机。
— 什么时候买的？
- 4) — 也许他摔了一跤？
— 摔了一跤？
- 5) — 严重吗？
— 不，只是胃有点疼。一定是吃多了。
- 6) 他有自己的打算，但不愿向别人谈论。
- 7) 这件事你不懂，就别再操心了。
- 8) 多年来一直喝这种苦药，我真是喝够了。
- 9) — 窗户没有开。
— 我来开。
- 10) — 她怎么啦？
— 又饿又急，昏过去了。

2. 翻译下列各句，注意否定部分的处理。

- 1) 如果没有太阳，什么都不能生存。
- 2) 她觉得她再也不能忍受她丈夫的侮辱。
- 3) 有时孩子们下棋并不全是为了娱乐。
- 4) 并非每种疾病都用同样的方法治疗。
- 5) 那时，我们连电脑都没有，更不用说电子邮件和因特网了。
- 6) 这些细菌要在温度达到 100 摄氏度时才会死亡。

3. 翻译下列各句，注意倒装用法。

- 1) 母亲一直到孩子入睡后才离开房间。
- 2) 他害怕得很，动也不敢动。
- 3) 那人从马上跳下来。
- 4) 一个长着两只大眼睛的腼腆女孩坐在屋子的后面。
- 5) 尽管他们很勇敢，但这样的危险仍使他们感到畏惧。
- 6) 要是你参加了毕业典礼，我就会见到你了。
- 7) 那女婴一看到狗就哭了起来。
- 8) 只是因为他生病了，他才旷课的。

- 9) 我们将来的家就是这个样子。
10) 山顶上耸立着一棵大松树。

4. 综合练习

- 1) 在中国的投资活动一定能成为沟通世界各国和地区的企业家与中国市场的一座桥梁, 促进中国和世界经济共同发展、共同繁荣。
- 2) 就这些问题本身来说, 就联合国的前途来说, 这都是振奋人心的。
- 3) 美国财政部长亨利·保尔森昨天以上海为终点结束了他对亚洲三国的访问。作为美国总统的首席经济政策顾问和最主要的经济事务发言人, 保尔森昨天上午在上海期货交易所发表的主题演讲被认为是布什政府对华经济政策的最新阐述。
- 4) 但是, 对于所有的正在进行的激动人心的工作而言, 科学远没有达到一个能塑造完美的人的美好新世界的景象——或者甚至说不能塑造一个美好的番茄。
- 5) 就短期而言, 遗传筛选将是运用新技术的最可行的办法。……在某些情况下, 这些信息可以延缓疾病的发作或是减轻它的作用效果。比如, 一个有着遗传性易患心脏病体质的人可以进行低脂肪的饮食。如果科学家测出由于制造一种重要蛋白质的基因存在缺陷, 从而导致这种蛋白质丢失的话, 也许科学家就可以给这位病人提供人工蛋白质。



参考译文

1. 1) What about it, young man? (Have you) Found yourself a girl yet?
2) — Better today.
— Much better.
3) — Lao Wang bought a TV-set.
— When?
4) — Perhaps he slipped over?
— Slipped over? (Or: Really?)
5) — Anything serious?
— No, just a slight pain in the stomach. Must have eaten too much.
6) He has his own plans, but does not like to talk about them.
7) You don't understand what it's all about. You needn't bother.
8) For years I've been taking this revolting medicine I've had more than enough of it already.
9) — The windows are closed.
— I'll open them.
10) — What's wrong with her?
— She's so hungry and troubled; she's fainted.
2. 1) Without the sun, nothing could live.
2) She doesn't feel that she can stand her husband's insult any longer.
3) Sometimes the children don't play chess for amusement.
4) Every disease is not cured in the same way.
5) At that time we didn't have computers, to say nothing of e-mails and Internet.
6) These bacteria will not die until the temperature reaches 100°C.
3. 1) Not until the child fell asleep did the mother leave the room.

- 2) So frightened was he that he did not dare to move an inch.
 - 3) Down jumped the man from the horse.
 - 4) Sitting at the back of the room was a shy girl with two big eyes.
 - 5) Brave as they were, the danger made them afraid.
 - 6) Had you attended the graduate ceremony (= If you had attended the graduate ceremony), I should have seen you.
 - 7) Hardly had the baby seen the dog when she cried.
 - 8) Only because he was ill was he absent from school.
 - 9) Such would be our home in the future.
 - 10) On top of the hill stands a big pine tree.
4. 1) The investment activities in China will surely serve as a bridge connecting entrepreneurs from all the countries and regions in the world and the Chinese market, and promote the common economic development and prosperity of China and the world.
- 2) This is encouraging in terms of the problems themselves and also for the future of the United Nations.
- 3) Yesterday US Secretary of Treasury, Henry Paulson, left Shanghai, and made an end of the trip to the three countries in Asia. As the chief economic consultant and spokesman of US president, Paulson delivered a keynote address in Shanghai Futures Exchange. And this address was regarded as the latest elaboration of the economic policies of the Bush administration towards China.
- 4) For all the fevered work being done, however, science is still far away from the Brave New World vision of engineering a perfect human or even a perfect tomato.
- 5) In the short run, the most practical way to use the new technology will be in genetic screening. ... In some cases the knowledge may lead to treatments that delay the onset of the disease or soften its effects. Someone with a genetic to heart disease, for example, could follow a low-fat diet. And if scientists determine that a vital protein is missing because the gene that was supposed to make it is defective, they might be able to give the patient an artificial version of the protein.

星期六

汉译英解题技巧 (五)

无主句、长句、习语的译法

一、无主句的译法

汉语中，只有谓语部分而没有主语部分的句子叫做无主句。由于汉语是主语显著的语系，因而无主句的使用很频繁。而英语是主语显著的语系，在翻译汉语的无主句时，我们往往需要采取一定的措施，使译后的英语句子规范、地道。

1 根据上下文补充适当的主语

不经一事，不长一智。

You cannot gain knowledge without practice. Wisdom comes from experience.

知己知彼，百战不殆。

Know the enemy and know yourself, and you can fight a hundred times with no danger of defeat.

不努力就不会成功。

One can never succeed without making great efforts.

弄得不好，就会前功尽弃。

If things are not properly handled, our labor will be totally lost.

活到老，学到老。

One is never too old to learn. You live and learn.

没有调查研究，就没有发言权。

He who makes no investigation and study has no right to speak.

2 采用祈使句式

汉语中表示请求、命令、号召及口号等的无主句，可仿照英语中的同类句式来译。

禁止停车！

No parking!

小心轻放！

Handle with care!

请勿吸烟！

No smoking!

请慢点讲！

Speak a little slower, please.

量体裁衣。

Fit the dress to the figure.

3 采用倒装语序

有些表示事物存在、出现或消失的无主句，其结构形式与英语的倒装句相似，因此，在汉译英时采用倒装句十分得体。

和这些照片一道展出的还有我们同学自己创作的书画作品。

On display by the side of those photographs were paintings by our fellow students.

地下埋藏着大量的金、银和铜。

Hidden underground is a wealth of gold, silver and copper.

在游廊的最左端，靠近一道门，坐着一位将近三十岁的男子。

Close by a door at the extreme left of the veranda sat a man of about thirty.

4 采用被动语态

(1) 表示要求和规定的无主句往往翻译成英语的被动句。

必须认真做好考试的准备工作。

Good preparations must be made for the final examination.

弄得不好，就会前功尽弃。

If things are not properly handled, our labor will be totally lost.

必须保证八小时睡眠。

Eight hours' sleep must be guaranteed.

教室内禁止吸烟。

Smoking is not allowed in the classroom.

(2) 有些表示事物存在、出现无主句，可以翻译成被动句。

封面上印着一个猎人的像。

The figure of a hunter was printed on the cover.

我们学校将修建更多的教学楼。

More teaching buildings will be built on our campus.

去年发现了一种稀有元素。

A rare element was found last year.

5 采用 “There be ...”、“It + be ... + to ...” 等结构

汉语中某些格言、经验或带有哲理的无主句往往翻译成这类结构。

很久很久以前，有一位美丽的白雪公主。

Long, long ago, there lived a beautiful princess named Snow White.

与自然斗争，其乐无穷。

It is a great joy to battle against nature.

能不能在下课之前做完这个练习？

Is it possible to finish this exercise before the class is over?

二、长句的译法

长句指的是字数较多、结构较复杂、含有多层意思的句子。汉语和英语都有长句，但

在句子的结构上差异很大。所以，在翻译时要讲究方法，否则就难以准确清晰地传达原文的各层意思。在处理长句时，经常碰到的问题是如何断句和如何区分主从。

1 断句

所谓断句，就是把原文的一句话译为两句或更多句。大凡长句多为复句，而汉语复句和英语复句往往在结构上不同。汉语的一个复句有时需要断作几句来译，才能使意思清晰，结构利落，合乎英语的表达习惯。另外，现代英语的句子结构也趋向简短，文章中非限制性的关系子句用得越来越少。为此，翻译汉语长句时也常常采用断句手法。

1) 历来只有真正老实的劳动者，才懂得劳动生产财富的道理，才能排除一切想入非非的发财思想，而踏踏实实地用自己的辛勤劳动，为社会也为自己创造财富和积累财富。

分析：原文全句 70 多字，包含了三层意思，译文断为三句，每句讲一层意思。读来十分清晰、利索。

译文：Throughout the ages only honest labouring people see the truth that wealth is created through labour. Only they can free their minds of any fantastic ideas of getting rich. And only they create and accumulate wealth for both society and themselves through hard practical work.

2) 但他性情不同，既不求官爵，又不交纳朋友，终日闭户读书。

分析：原文先总后分的叙述，译文中先将总的概括翻译为一句，然后再分别叙述。

译文：He was, however, eccentric. He did not look for an official post, and did not even have any friends. All day he studied behind closed doors.

3) 我们的一般企业很少注意经济效益，广泛存在着劳动无定员、生产无定额、质量无检查、成本无核算的现象，在人力、物力、财力上造成很多浪费。

分析：原文最后部分“在人力、物力、财力上造成很多浪费”，是对前面所述情况的总结。译文在这里断开，另起一句，更为明确、醒目。

译文：Our enterprises in general pay little attention to economic result, since usually the number of workers needed for a job is not fixed, production quota is not fixed, the quality of products is not checked and cost accounting is not earnestly practiced. All this has incurred a big waste of manpower, material resources and money.

4) 我们的人民政府是真正代表人民利益的政府，是为人民服务的政府，但是它同人民群众之间也有一定的矛盾。

分析：这一句里的意思有转折，所以译文断句比较清楚。当然也可以用 but 连起来译成一长句，但不如断开分述清晰。断句后，另加 nevertheless 一字，更能表达转折的含义。

译文：Our People's Government is one that genuinely represents the people's interests. It is a government that serves the people. Nevertheless, there are still certain contradictions between this government and the people.

5) 人民的觉悟是不容易的，要去掉人民头脑中的错误思想，需要我们做很多切切实实的工作。

分析：原句中包含着从一般到细节的过渡，断句分译才使译文更有条理。

译文：The political awakening of the people is not easy. It requires much earnest effort on our part to rid their minds of wrong ideas.

2 区分主从

汉语复句中往往不用关联词，分句之间的逻辑关系在很多情况下主要依靠排列顺序来表示，即采用所谓“意合法”。同时，汉语动词又没有英语动词那样的词形变化。汉语复句里接二连三出现的动词，从形式上看，它们都是等立的，没有主从、偏正之分。因此，在翻译时，汉语复句的处理，必须首先从逻辑上仔细分析，弄清楚各分句间的关系，区分开哪个分句为主，哪个分句为从，然后按照英语的表达习惯，适当加以处理。一般说来，应该是：凡是为主的分句，即正句，用英语限定式动词结构来表达；从属的分句，即偏句，则可采用各种非限定式动词短语或介词短语来表达，或增加从属关联词、或通过各种从句形式来处理。

1) 错误和挫折教训了我们，使我们比较地聪明起来了，我们的事情就办得比较好一些。

译文：Taught by mistakes and setbacks, we have become wiser and handle our affairs better.

分析：“我们……聪明起来了”是主要部分，“错误和挫折教训了我们”是“聪明起来了”的原因，是从属部分。译文将前者以谓语动词译成全句的主体，而将后者用过去分词短语来表达，使整个译文主从分明，结构简练，意思清晰。

2) 老人家听到甥儿这些坚贞不屈视死如归的豪言壮语，激奋和伤痛的感情冲击着他，不由得老泪纵横起来。

译文：On hearing his nephew's unflinching and fearless talk, overcome by feelings of sorrow and distress, Uncle Huang gave way to a flood of tears.

分析：这个句子的主要部分是“老人家……不由得老泪纵横起来”，所以把它译为主句。“听到……豪言壮语”和“……冲激着他”都是引起“老泪纵横”的原因。译文分别用介词短语和分词短语表达，这样就明确地分开了主从。

3) 这些厂子，大搞技术革新，充分利用当地资源，生产出大量的、多种多样的药品。

译文：Going in for technological innovation and making full use of local resources, these plants now turn out a wide range of medicines in great quantities.

分析：句中“大搞……”和“充分利用……”表示方式、状态，是从属部分，都用现在分词短语处理；“生产出……”是全句主要部分，故用限定式动词来译。

4) 我们用自己动手的方法，达到了丰衣足食的目的。

译文：By using our own hands we have attained the objective of “ample food and clothing”.

5) 这些错误都应该向他们去进行教育，加以纠正，而不是简单地去进行斥责。

译文：These mistakes should be corrected by educating the cadres and peasants and not by simply dressing them.

分析：以4、5两例的译文中，在表示目的的部分用动词，而在所使用的手段部分用名词，和介词一起构成介词短语做状语，使整个句子主从分明。

三、习语的译法

习语是人们长期沿袭使用的定型词组或短句。习语一般具有结构严谨、形式简练、含

义精辟、形象鲜明、表达生动等特点，因而为人们所喜闻乐用、广泛流传。习语的翻译比较复杂。但是只要我们遵循原文的思想内容，联系上下文和语言结构的整体来进行翻译，避免死译硬译，习语的翻译也没什么难的。现将经常用到的有关汉语习语的几种译法分别介绍如下：

1 直译

直译能够比较完整地保留原习语的比喻形象、民族色彩和语言风格。但直译必须以不引起读者误解和不违背译文表达习惯为前提。例如：

处理人民内部的矛盾，必须坚持和风细雨的方法，坚持“团结—批评—团结”的方法。

译文：It is essential to persist in using methods as mild as a drizzle and as gentle as a breeze, and to adhere to the formula of “unity-criticism-unity”, in dealing with contradictions among the people.

分析：原文中用“和风细雨”形象地说明一项政策，直译成 as mild as a drizzle and as gentle as a breeze，形象、喻义与原文相同，读者亦不难理解。

咳！这一来，竹篮子打水一场空了！

译文：Ah! We were drawing water in a bamboo basket.

分析：歇后语“竹篮子打水一场空”的前一部分“竹篮子打水”全照字面直译了，而后一部分“一场空”虽然省略不译，但喻义十分明确，故仍应归入直译法。

2 意译

当直译有困难或勉强译出而英语读者无法理解时一般应采用意译法。意译主要是指在翻译时抓住内容和喻义这一重要方面要牺牲形象，结合上下文灵活地传达原意。例如：

她怕碰一鼻子灰，话到了嘴边，她又把它吞了下去。

译文：She was afraid of being snubbed, so she swallowed the words that came to her lips.

分析：“碰一鼻子灰”如直译成英语，外国读者未必能理解其含义，故采用意译法译为 being snubbed。

我要有个三长两短，你给玉山捎个话。

译文：If anything should happen to me, let Yushan know!

分析：“有个三长两短”比喻可能发生意外的不幸事件，保留其喻义，译为 If anything should happen to ... 即可。

3 借用英语中的同义习语

英语里有一些细雨和汉语的一些习语采用相同或极其相似的形象或比喻，表达相同或极其相似的喻意。如“隔墙有耳”和 walls have ears，“一帆风顺”和 plain sailing，“煽风点火”和 to fan the flame(s)，“泼冷水”和 to throw cold water on 等。遇到类似这种情况，就不妨借用英语中同义习语来译。但在借用英语习语时，必须注意两种习语各自的特点，避免在时代、地点、条件、民族习惯、情感等方面与原文的上下文形成矛盾。现举例如下：

只有大胆地破釜沉舟地跟他们拼，或许还有翻身的那一天！

译文：All you can do is to burn your boats and fight them in the hope that one day you'll come out on top.

分析：汉语成语“破釜沉舟”借用英语 to burn one's boats 来表达，无论在内容、形式、

情感等方面都十分吻合。

我没想到他对同志们的批评竟充耳不闻。

译文: I didn't expect him to turn a deaf ear to the comrades' criticism.

分析: “充耳不闻”, 这里借用英语同义习语 to turn a deaf ear to 来表达, 也很妥帖。

4 直译和意译结合

在采用直译以保留原文比喻形象的同时, 又兼用意译, 有时略作适当补充, 使译文能更加明确地传达原文含义。例如:

她一个单身人, 无亲无故……

译文: But this girl was all by herself and far from home, without a single relative or friend to help her.

分析: “无亲无故”译为 without a single relative or friend, 同时补充上 to help her, 点出含义、使全句意义完整。

每日训练

1. 采用适当的方式翻译下列无主句。

- 1) 一有问题就去解决, 不要等问题成了堆才去作一次总解决。
- 2) 不入虎穴, 焉得虎子。
- 3) 我身边的桌子上点着一盏灯, 灯旁放着一只小盒子。
- 4) 必须认真地做好建厂以前的准备工作。
- 5) 前面坐着一位老人。
- 6) 不努力便不会成功。
- 7) 突然钻出一只狗, 追着她咬, 几乎把她吓糊涂了。
- 8) 以其人之道, 还治其人之身。
- 9) 留得青山在, 不怕没柴烧。
- 10) 屋内悄无一人, 只听见钟在滴答滴答地走着。

2. 结合所学技巧翻译下列长句。

- 1) 我们恢复和采取这些贸易方式的原因很简单: 我们出口商品就是为了满足国外客户消费方面的需要。
- 2) 也许有些人很可恶, 有些人很卑鄙 (despicable)。而当我设身为他想想的时候, 我才知道: 他比我还可怜。所以请原谅所有你见过的人, 好人或者坏人。
- 3) 当今经济社会转型过程正在引发一个新的管理转型问题。因为传统战略决策的基础与条件已发生了重大变化。
- 4) 中国是个大国, 百分之八十的人口从事农业, 但耕地只占土地面积的十分之一, 其余为山脉、森林、城镇和其他用地。
- 5) 旧历新年快来了。这是一年中的第一件大事。除了那些负债过多的人以外, 大家都热烈地欢迎这个佳节的到来。
- 6) 如果说宣布收回香港就会像夫人说的“带来灾难性的影响”, 那我们要勇敢地面对这个灾难, 做出决策。
- 7) 比如军事指导员, 他们并不对外发宣言, 但是他们要和士兵讲话, 要和人民接洽, 这

不是宣传是什么？

- 8) 一定要言行一致，理论与实践密切结合，反对华而不实和任何虚夸，少说空话，多做工作，扎扎实实，埋头苦干。
- 9) 要充分重视自然科学理论包括现代数学、高能物理、分子生物学等基础理论的研究，忽视这一点就不能掌握和运用世界上先进的科学技术成果，不能很好地解决我们建设中遇到的重大问题。

3. 翻译下列各句，注意画线的习语的译法。

- 1) 咱们不能黑影里点灯，只看脚下。
- 2) 他咯咯地笑着说：“这叫画饼充饥！”
- 3) 失败乃成功之母。
- 4) 最重要的，她不是小姐堆里娇生惯养出来的人。
- 5) 人怕出名猪怕壮。
- 6) 送君千里，终有一别。
- 7) 东风压倒西风。
- 8) 夫妻无隔夜之仇。
- 9) 打蛇先打头，擒贼先擒王。
- 10) 他对乡里的情况了如指掌。

4. 综合练习

- 1) 当一个 WTO 成员方政府就某一争端提出投诉而且该投诉政府认为其利益正受到另一成员政府行为的损害时，争端解决机构 (DSB) 才了解到该事件。
- 2) 韦尔奇并非出身富贵之门，也绝非一夜成名，他是靠自己的奋斗脱颖而出的。
- 3) 在人口稠密的城市，说一个人必须认识他的近邻这个观念早已湮灭，但在小城镇和乡村里却依旧存在。
- 4) 人们经过失败之后，也要从失败中取得教训，改正自己的思想使之符合外界的规律性，人们就能变失败为胜利，所谓“失败乃成功之母”，“吃一堑，长一智”，就是这个道理。
- 5) 荷花居污泥而不染，若为怕泥污而种在旱地上，它早就枯死了。人生也一样，避恶、避丑、避邪，只能说明自己心灵脆弱。
- 6) 一个人如果能感觉到趣味，有时会像着了魔一般，真能废寝忘食，真能不知老之将至，苦苦钻研，锲而不舍，在学问上焉能没有收获。在良师的指导下按部就班地循序渐进，一步步地发现新天地，当然乐在其中，如果浅尝辄止，当然味同嚼蜡，自讨没趣。
- 7) 正是因为不停地追求进取，我们才感到生活幸福。一件事完成后，另一件随之而来，如此连绵不绝，永无止境。对于往前看的人来说，眼前总有一番新天地。虽然我们蜗居于这颗小行星上，整日忙于琐事且生命短暂，但我们生来就有不尽的希望，如天上繁星，遥不可及。只要生命犹在，希望便会不止。真正的幸福在于怎样开始，而不是如何结束，在于我们的希冀，而并非拥有。



参考译文

1. 1) Whenever a problem crops up, tackle it right away, don't let problems pile up and then try to settle them all at one go.

- 2) How can you catch tiger cubs without entering the tiger's lair?
 - 3) On the table beside me a lamp was burning, and near it lay a little box.
 - 4) Before the factory is set up, preparations must be made in real earnest.
 - 5) Ahead sat an old man.
 - 6) One can never succeed without making great efforts.
 - 7) Suddenly a dog began to chase after her, scaring her almost out of her wits.
 - 8) Deal with a man as he deals with you. Or: Pay somebody back in his own coin.
 - 9) As long as the green mountains are there, one need not worry about firewood. Or: While there is life, there is hope.
 - 10) No one was in the room; only the ticking of a clock could be heard.
2. 1) The reason why we have restored and adopted these trade practices is very simple. Our export commodities are to meet the need of the consumption of our foreign customers.
- 2) Some may be wicked, and some may be despicable. Only when I put myself in his position did I know he is more miserable than I. So forgive all that you have met, no matter what kind of persons they are.
 - 3) The process of the economic society transformation is causing a new management transformation problem nowadays, because the foundation and condition of traditional strategic decision causes grave variety.
 - 4) China is a large country with four-fifths of the population engaged in agriculture, but only one tenth of the land is farmland, the rest being mountains, forests and places for urban and other uses.
 - 5) The traditional New Year was soon approaching, the first big event of the year, and everyone, except those who owed heavy debts was enthusiastically looking forward to it.
 - 6) If the announcement of the recovery of Hong Kong would bring about, as Madam put it, "disastrous effects," we will face up to that disaster and make a new policy decision.
 - 7) Take the military commanders, for instance. Though they make no public statements they have to talk to the soldiers and have dealings with the people. What is this if not propaganda?
 - 8) Deed and word must match, and theory and practice must be closely integrated. We must reject flashiness without substance and every sort of boasting. There must be less empty talk and more hard work. We must be steadfast and dedicated.
 - 9) Full attention must be paid to theoretical research in the natural sciences, including such basic subjects as modern mathematics, high energy physics and molecular biology. Negligence in this respect will make it impossible for us to master and apply the results of advanced world science and technology and properly solve important problems in our construction.
3. 1) Let's not light a lamp in the dark which shows only our feet.
- 2) Now he chuckled and commented: "That's called 'drawing a cake to satisfy your hanger'."

- 3) Failure is the mother of success.
 - 4) What's most important, she isn't one of those well-born young ladies who've been pampered and spoiled all their lives.
 - 5) Fame is as fatal to man as fattening to pigs.
 - 6) Although you may escort a guest a thousand miles, yet must be parting at last.
 - 7) The east wind prevails over the West wind. (or: The East wind subdues the West wind.)
 - 8) Enmity between husband and wife doesn't last the night.
 - 9) If you want to kill a snake you must first hit it on the head and if you want to catch a band of robbers you must first catch their leader.
 - 10) He knew everything about the township like the back of his hand.
4. 1) Only when a member government of WTO appeals to certain dispute and complains that its interest is being undermined by another member government, will the DSB get to know the issue.
- 2) Neither was Welch born nobly, nor he won the fame overnight; he outstood by his own striving.
- 3) Gone is the notion that one must get to know his neighbors in densely-populated cities, however, it still exists in small towns and rural areas.
- 4) After experiencing failure, you would learn the lesson from failure and adjust your thoughts to objective laws. As a result, you get success from failure which is reflected by the saying "failure is the mother of success" and "a fall into a pit, a gain in your wit".
- 5) Lotus comes out of ooze, yet keeps stainless. If it were planted on dry land for fear that it would be stained by sullage, it would have faded. It holds the same argument for life. Avoiding evil, ugliness, and wickedness can only prove a fragile soul of one's own.
- 6) A man who really has interest will immerse himself in learning and work hard even to forget food and sleep and neglect the age. Isn't it natural for a man of such devotion to have the harvest? You will discover a new world step by step if you are in an orderly way under the good teacher's instruction. On the contrary, if you refuse to go into a subject in depth or don't follow the proper order, you will find learning is insipid and get the cold shoulder.
- 7) We live in an ascending scale when we live happily, one thing leading to another in an endless series. There is always a new horizon for onward-looking men, and although we dwell on a small planet, immersed in petty business and not enduring beyond a brief period of years, we are so constituted that our hopes are inaccessible, like stars, and the term of hoping is prolonged until the term of life. To be truly happy is a question of how we begin and not of how we end, of what we want and not of what we have.

星期日

本周测试

1 英国《泰晤士高等教育》特刊近日公布最新全球大学名气榜，哈佛大学与麻省理工学院高踞前两名，美国大学在上榜的百所大学中优势明显。剑桥大学和牛津大学跻身前十，但其他的英国高校排名下降，亚洲大学的声誉排名呈上升趋势。

该排行榜征求了1.7万名学者的意见与看法。该排行榜试图根据全球受访学者的意见，对难以衡量但很重要的高校“声誉”质量进行量化。

英国《泰晤士高等教育》特刊于去年开始发布，前五名高校与今年相同，两所位于波士顿的名校哈佛大学和麻省理工学院也位于前两位。剑桥大学排名第三，仍然是排名最高的英国高校，位居其后的是斯坦福大学和加州大学伯克利分校。

但该排行榜的编辑费尔·巴迪说，可以看出，英国高校的排名将会下滑，排名前一百位的英国高校减少了，其他多所英国高校排名也在下降，包括帝国理工学院和英国伦敦大学学院。他说：“我们作为全球知名大学聚集地的声誉遭到重创。”来自中国、日本、新加坡和韩国的入围高校增多，这也反映出亚洲国家作为新的教育强国的崛起。瑞士表现也不俗，相对于较少的人口来说，有三所大学上榜已经相当不易。

这一排名没有得到官方认可，但在大学如何把自己推销给学生的过程中起着越来越重要的作用，特别是在高等教育全球化的今天。这份最新排名进一步印证了“全球高校巨头”的出现，领头的则是美国西海岸的斯坦福大学、东海岸的哈佛大学及英国的牛津和剑桥大学。

2 科学家警告说，全球变暖可能会使人类变矮。科学家宣称已经找到证据：近5000万年前全球变暖就曾让世界上最早的马个头变小。

事实上，来自佛罗里达州和内布拉斯加州的大学的一支研究团队称，他们已经找到地球变暖和哺乳动物个头之间的联系。这一案例中马变矮的现象是上一次全球变暖时发生的。科学家用化石来追溯马从5600万年前诞生至今的进化历程。随着气温的上升，马的个头变小，反之马的个头就变大。《每日邮报》援引佛罗里达自然历史博物馆馆长乔纳森·布洛赫博士的话说，它们曾一度像家猫那么小。科学家称，当前的全球变暖可能也会对哺乳动物产生同样的影响，甚至可能会让人类的个子也变小。

布洛赫博士在《科学》杂志中写道：“马最初的个头很小，和一只小狗的个头差不多，大约也就像一只迷你型雪纳瑞犬那么大。令人惊讶的是，在马诞生后过了一段时间，它们的个子变得更小，之后个头又显著变大，而这些变化与全球变暖和变冷正好是相对应的。”“我们已经知道哺乳动物在那个时期个头较小，而那个时期气候也较暖，但我们还未意识到正是温度驱动着身体大小的进化。”

3 面对面地审问某人也许不是得到真实答案的最佳方式。用发短信的方式提问一般更能——得到实情，因为人们有更多的时间思考。通过发短信还能得知人通常不会透露的敏感信息，比如他们真实的饮酒量，或运动量的多少。尽管警察不大可能转用 iPhone 来审问犯人，但这是从朋友那里获得准确、真实回答的好办法。

密歇根大学的认知心理学家弗雷德·康拉德说：“我们研究的初步结果显示，相比语音访谈，人们在短信里更可能透露敏感信息。”康拉德说：“这有些令人惊讶。许多人以为发短信会降低透露敏感信息的可能性，因为这会产生问题和回答的持久的可视记录，其他人可能会在你手机上看到。”在发短信时，人们不大可能说个大概数字，更可能给出准确的答案。康拉德说：“我认为人们通过短信能给出更准确的答案，因为短信很大程度上是一种非同步的通信方式，没有电话访谈的时间压力。结果，应答者能有更多时间来想出更准确的答案。”

参考译文

1 Harvard and the Massachusetts Institute of Technology are top of a global league — table of university reputation — in a top 100 dominated by US institutions, by the *Times Higher Education* magazine. Cambridge and Oxford make the top 10 — but other UK universities have slipped, while Asian institutions have risen.

The rankings are based on the perceptions of 17,000 academics. This list is an attempt to quantify the elusive but important quality of “reputation” in higher education — with its findings based on the opinions of academics around the world.

The first such ranking by the *Times Higher Education* magazine, published last year, had the same top five as this year — with the two Boston-based institutions, Harvard and MIT, in first and second place. Cambridge was once again the highest ranking UK University in third place, followed by Stanford and University of California, Berkeley.

But Phil Baty, editor of the *Times Higher Education* rankings, says there is an underlying picture of UK universities heading downwards — with fewer in the top 100 and a decline for others including Imperial College London and University College London. “Our global reputation as the home of outstanding universities has been hit,” he said. Reflecting the rise of Asian countries as the new education superpowers, there is an increasing presence for countries such as China, Japan, Singapore and South Korea. Switzerland is also seen as performing well, relative to its population, with three universities in the top 100.

Such rankings do not have an official status, but they have become an increasingly significant part of how universities market themselves to students, particularly as higher education has become more globalised. This latest league table reinforces the emergence of “global super brands”, headed by institutions such as Stanford on the US West Coast and Harvard on the East Coast, and Oxford and Cambridge in the UK.

2 Global warming could make humans shorter; warn scientists who claim to have —— found evidence that it caused the world's first horses to shrunk nearly 50 million years ago.

In fact, a team from the universities of Florida and Nebraska says it has found a link

between the Earth heating up and the size of mammals — horses, in this case, the last time the world heated up. The scientists used fossils to follow the evolution of horses from their earliest appearance 56 million years ago. As temperatures went up their size went down, and vice versa; at one point they were as small as a house cat, said Dr Jonathan Bloch, curator of the Florida Museum of Natural History, was quoted by the *Daily Mail* as saying. The scientists say that the current warming could have the same effect on mammals — and could even make humans smaller.

“Horses started out small, about the size of a small dog like a miniature schnauzer. What’s surprising is that after they first appeared, they then became even smaller and then dramatically increased in size, and that exactly corresponds to the global warming event, followed by cooling. “It had been known that mammals were small during that time and that it was warm, but we hadn’t understood that temperature specifically was driving the evolution of body size,” Dr Bloch said in the *Science* journal.

3 Being “put on the spot” by a face-to-face question might NOT be the best way to — get a truthful answer. People tend to tell the truth more when asked questions via text message — because they have more time to think. It also includes sensitive information that the person might not normally reveal — such as exactly how much they drink, or how much (or little) they exercise. While the police are unlikely to switch to interviewing suspects via iPhone, it’s a good way to elicit precise, true answers from friends.

“The preliminary results of our study suggest that people are more likely to disclose sensitive information via text messages than in voice interviews,” says Fred Conrad, a cognitive psychologist at the University of Michigan. “This is sort of surprising,” says Conrad, “since many people thought that texting would decrease the likelihood of disclosing sensitive information because it creates a persistent, visual record of questions and answers that others might see on your phone.” When texting, people are less likely to “round” figures up or down, and more likely to give precise answers. “We believe people give more precise answers via texting because there’s just not the time pressure in a largely asynchronous mode like text that there is in phone interviews,” says Conrad. “As a result, respondents are able to take longer to arrive at more accurate answers.”

[illegible]

第三周 写作（上） ——基础篇

- 星期一 提纲作文写作方法（一）
对立观点型
- 星期二 提纲作文写作方法（二）
阐述主题型、解决问题型
- 星期三 图表作文写作方法
- 星期四 情景作文写作方法
- 星期五 应用文写作方法（一）
- 星期六 应用文写作方法（二）
- 星期日 本周测试

星期一

提纲作文写作方法（一）

对立观点型

一、考博写作透析

（一）考博写作命题方向

体裁：根据各校历年考题分析，考博写作常见题型可分为：提纲作文（含命题作文）、应用文、图表类作文和写内容提要等。

题材：考博写作主要涉及两个方面：一是与考博和学习生活相关的内容；二是社会热点问题以及和人们生活息息相关的内容。

（二）评分标准

由于考博无统一的考试大纲，所以写作的考查并无一致的标准。写作分值介于 15 到 20 分之间不等。

（三）写作基本步骤

考博的写作尽管难度较高，但是也基本遵从三段式的写法方法，这是国内外语考试最安全、最基础的写作模式。

1. 确定各段主题

考试中，部分提纲式作文会给出若干条提纲，但是这些提纲只是规定了文章的主要内容，每一个提纲并不等于是每一段的主题，考生需要结合文章题目和所给提纲的内容重新确定各段的主题。

2. 列出每段提纲

确定各段主题以后，不要匆忙动笔，应该将各段要写的内容大致列出，做到心中有数，这样才能行文流畅，衔接自然。

3. 展开段落

一般来说，段落的基本构成包括：主题句、扩展句和结尾句。

主题句只有一句，要具有概括性，要表述清楚、简单明了，注意不可过长。扩展句是主题句内容的延伸和语意的补充，起到进一步阐述主题句、扩展段落中心思想的作用，因此一般都要在两句以上。结尾句也只有一句，主要用来总结段落的主要内容或得出结论，通常和段落主题句在意义上相互呼应。需要注意的是，并不是每一个段落都必须同时包含主题句、扩展句和结尾句，段落主题句与结尾句可以只有一个。

4. 浏览全文

对于这一步，很多考生都会因为时间的关系而忽略，其实，只需花上 1~2 分钟的时间

通读一遍全文,通常就可以避免拼写、语法和句子结构方面的小错误。

本周的重点是学习这类写作题型的写作方法和要点。

二、提纲作文

(一) 提纲作文常见类型

从题目形式来看:提纲作文一般分为两类:无提纲型标题作文和有提纲型标题作文。

无提纲型标题作文只给出题目,要求考生根据所给的题目,运用恰当的文体,写出切题、流畅、无重大语法错误的文章,如 The Greatest Invention in the Past Century 便是。无提纲型作文是各大院校最普遍的考查方式。

由于无提纲型的标题作文只提供题目,因此对题目的审视显得尤为重要。如果审题不清,就不知写作的内容和方法,也就无从下笔。

从考查内容来分,常见的提纲式作文主要包括以下几类:对立观点型、阐述主题型和解决问题型。

(二) 提纲作文写作注意事项

因为提纲作文只为考生提供一种思路,所以考生可以在提限定范围内自由选取素材,在具体的写作过程中进行独创性的阐述。在写作提纲作文时应该从四个方面着手:

1. 写好提纲式作文的关键是认真审题和分析所给的提纲,认清题目和提纲之间的关系,然后确定文章的主题、内容以及文体。审题主要是指对题目和提纲的理解,尽管提纲往往不是以完整句子的形式出现,但包含了文章和各个段落的中心内容,因此对题目和提纲进行仔细研究,透彻地理解题目和提纲是写好作文的关键。只有理解了题目和提纲的内容,才不至于在写作过程中偏离文章的中心思想。

2. 每一个提纲可以作为文章的一个段落层次,段落的展开围绕提纲的中心和内容,不能偏离,也不能任意增减。通常提纲作文都是给出三个提纲,每个提纲即是一段。但需要同学们注意的是:当给出的提纲小于三个时,比如只给出了两个提纲,那么其中的一个提纲就要分成两段来写。

3. 写好主题句。提纲只是对文章的提示和概括,不是主题句。这需要根据提纲的性质,写出完整的、体现提纲主旨的句子,使之成为主题句,然后围绕主题句进行扩展。这是写好作文最关键的一步。

4. 收集材料支持主题句。材料可以是事实、例证、亲身经历、名人名言、谚语警句等。应当注意的是,所选材料要与文章的主题相符,即要“扣题”。同时要具有典型性,能充分说明问题。在有多个例证的段落中,还要注意各个例证之间的统一性和连贯性。

(三) 对立观点型写作技巧

1. 对立观点型写作考查形式

对立观点式作文主要有两种:一种是需要考生对比阐述两种观点或做法及各自的理由,然后表明自己的观点或做法并说明理由;另一种是需要考生对比阐述某事物的利和弊或优缺点,继而表明自己的看法或态度。

第一种类型(针对某做法或观点):

- 1) 有一些人赞成 A 观点
- 2) 另一些人赞成 B 观点
- 3) 我的看法 C 观点

第二种类型（针对某事物或现象）：

- 1) 说明事物；
- 2) 事物本身的优缺点（或一方面）
- 3) 你对现状（或前景）的看法

2. 对立观点型写作思路及模板举例

类型一：

(1) 写作思路

第一段：观点或选择 A

第一句：主题句：提出讨论的主题，引出两种不同的观点或选择。

扩展句一：指出一种观点或选择。

扩展句二：阐述该种观点或选择的第一点理由。

扩展句三：阐述该种观点或选择的第二点理由。

（也可继续再加一个理由，但最好不要超过三个，以免文章结构不平衡）

第二段：观点或选择 B

主题句：转折引出另一种观点或选择。

扩展句二：阐述该种观点或选择的第一点理由。

扩展句三：阐述该种观点或选择的第二点理由。

（也可继续再加一个理由，但最好不要超过三个，以免文章结构不平衡）

第三段：“我”的观点或选择

主题句：综合两种观点或选择，表明“我”的观点或选择。

扩展句一：阐述“我”的第一点理由。

扩展句二：阐述“我”的第二点理由。

结尾句：提出建议或展望。

(2) 写作模板举例

When it comes to (文章主题), there are two sides of opinions of it. Some people say (A) is their favorite. They hold their view for the reason of (支持 A 的理由一). What is more, (理由二). Moreover, (理由三).

While others think that B is a better choice in the following three reasons. Firstly, (支持 B 的理由一). Secondly (besides), (理由二). Thirdly (finally), (理由三).

From my point of view, I support (我的观点 C). The reason is that (理由一). What's more, (理由二). As a matter of fact, there are some other reasons to explain my opinion. For me, the former is surely a wise choice.

以上模板，旨在介绍作文的写法，各位考生在运用时，可以结合所学并按照自己的习惯组织一个类似的模板，方便记忆，且容易得较高的分数。下文中的其他模板也是如此，请各位考生合理利用，切不可生搬硬套。

类型二：

(1) 写作思路

第一段：观点或选择 A

第一句：主题句：提出讨论的主题，引出对文章主题（事物或现象）的第一种观点。

扩展句一：阐述该种观点的第一点理由。

扩展句二：阐述该种观点的第二点理由。

（也可继续再加一个理由，但最好不要超过三个，以免文章结构不平衡）

第二段：观点或选择 B

主题句：转折引出另一种观点。

扩展句一：阐述该种观点的第一点理由。

扩展句二：阐述该种观点的第二点理由。

(也可继续再加一个理由，但最好不要超过三个，以免文章结构不平衡)

第三段：“我”的观点

主题句：综合两种观点，表明“我”的观点。

扩展句一：阐述“我”的第一点理由。

扩展句二：阐述“我”的第二点理由。

结尾句：提出建议或展望。

(2) 写作模板举例

Nowadays many people prefer (A 现象) because it has a significant role in our daily life. Generally, its advantages can be seen as follows. To start with, (A 的优点之一). Besides, (A 的优点之二).

But every coin has two sides. The negative aspects are also apparent. One of the important disadvantages is that (A 的第一个缺点). To make matters worse, (A 的第二个缺点).

Through the above analysis, I believe that the positive aspects outweigh the negative ones. Therefore, I would like to (我的看法).

(或: From the comparison between these positive and negative effects of A, we should take it reasonably and do it according to the circumstances we are in. Only by this way, (对前景的预测).)

三、经典范例

下面我们以厦门大学 2006 年博士研究生入学考试作文试题为例对类型二的写作方法加以说明：

Directions: Write an essay of no less than 250 words on the given topic of “The Pace of Life” based on the following outline. Present your argument with supporting details. You should write neatly on **ANSWER SHEET**.

1. 生活节奏越来越快，人们感到时间不够用。
2. 快节奏生活的利弊。
3. 我对快节奏生活的看法。

写作步骤分析：

显而易见，这是一道提纲式的作文题。可以通过以下审题和构思过程完成这篇作文：

1. 分析题目和提纲可知，应该写一篇说明文，当然其中可以夹有议论。要写出快节奏生活的“利”和“弊”，然后给出自己的看法，重点是利弊和看法。

2. 根据提纲，文章可分四段，第一段给出生活节奏越来越快的例子；第二段写“快节奏生活的利”；第三段阐述“快节奏生活的弊”；第四段是“我的”看法。前两段也可以进行合并。

3. 根据以上分析，可以把提纲转换为如下主题句：

As science and technology develops, the whole world seems to move at a faster and faster pace. The fast pace of society both have its advantages and downside effects. For the positive effects,

...

Fast pace of life, of course, also has many negative effects such as ...

However, we should not be afraid of it, for ...

4. 以材料支持各段主题句。第一段的材料可以是：生活节奏越来越快的一些具体表现；第二段写快节奏生活的利：提醒人们不断前进、更好利用时间等；第三段阐述快节奏生活的弊：使人压力过大等；第四段表明自己的观点：利大于弊，所以要正视快节奏生活，并合理安排时间、提高效率等，并作总结，圆满结尾。

参考范文

The Pace of Life

As science and technology develops, the whole world seems to move at a faster and faster pace. People in modern society are always feeling that they are desperately gasping for time. Because there are always endless things that need dealing with, and there always seems to be a lack in time.

The fast pace of society both has its advantages and downside effects. For the positive effects, fast pace of life can urge people to move forward. It gives people a sense of strain and helps people to realize the surrounding situations, thus urging people to move forwards and pursue further progress rather than linger around the past achievements. Besides, fast life pace can help people make better arrangement of their limited time and help them make better use of the resources, thus improving the efficiency of both individuals and society.

Fast pace of life, of course, also has many negative effects such as making people at tense every moment, making people suffer much from the pressure and so on.

However, we should not be afraid of it, for there are still so many benefits that fast pace can bring us. What's more, negative effects can be eliminated by our own efforts: arrange the spare time reasonably so as to put everything in order, and improve the efficiency of every task so that we can have more time to use and go ahead of time. As long as we regard fast life pace in a right way, it will be the motive rather than disincentive for our progress.

每日训练

1. Directions: In this section you are required to write an essay in accordance with following requirements.

- A. Title: Scientific Discovery — Curse or Blessing
- B. Time limit: 40 minutes
- C. Word limit: 180 – 200 words (not including the given opening sentences)
- D. Your composition should be based on the given opening sentences of each paragraph.
- E. Your composition must be written neatly on the **ANSWER SHEET**.

Outlines:

- 1) New scientific discoveries nearly always bring to mankind a blessing;

- 2) Yet sometimes scientific discoveries may prove a curse upon human race;
- 3) The misuse of scientific discoveries must be prevented.

2. Directions: In this part, you are required to write an essay for at least 250 words on the topic of “The Rise of Intellectual Property Protection” .

参考范文

1

Scientific Discovery — Curse or Blessing

New scientific discoveries nearly always bring to mankind a blessing. It is the new scientific discoveries that bring human beings from primitive caves gradually to cozy and comfortable dwelling houses, from shabby cotton clothes to various good-quality wearing apparel, from simple food to various kinds of nutritious foods. It is the new scientific discoveries that change people's ways of living, make people communicate more easily and broaden mankind's vision to the global village. Indeed, new scientific discoveries have fundamentally changed our earth and greatly improved living standard of the inhabitants on it.

Yet sometimes scientific discoveries may prove a curse upon human race. Especially that is the case when they are used or controlled by evil men or war maniacs. Take explosives as an example. Scientists succeeded in inventing explosives just for the sake of increasing productivity in mining industry, architectural industry, and so on. But such war maniacs as Hitler and his followers wanted to dominate the whole world and establish the Third Empire. They unleashed the Second World War and killed millions of innocent civilians. It proves that when some scientific discoveries are misguidedly used, they will pose a great threat to man's peaceful environment and life safety.

Thus, the misuse of scientific discoveries must be prevented. First of all, government should legislate for the benefit of the people and educate people to obey the law and put it into enforcement effectively. Secondly, we should have correct attitude towards some scientific discoveries because they are sometimes regarded as two-edged swords. Humans should aim at exploring the positive aspects fully but strictly control their negative use and try to eliminate the hazards to human race.

2

The Rise of Intellectual Property Protection

Intellectual property scarcely existed in the vocabularies of academic researchers and administrators even 15 years ago. Now it is an ever-present part of discussions on research policies and directions. This new importance of intellectual property in academia reflects a changing view on the relationships of research at universities to the surrounding society. Until recently, research at universities has been relatively isolated from demands of economic utility, and education of graduate students has emphasized a career in academic research as the final goal.

Now almost all research universities in the United States have technology licensing operations. The number of U. S. patents granted to American universities in a year rose from about 300 in 1980 to almost 2000 in 1995. The direct economic impact of technology licensing on the universities themselves has been relatively small. In contrast, the impact

of university technology transfer on the local and national economies has been substantial, and leads to the conclusion that the Licensing Act is one of the most successful pieces of economic development in recent history. It has been estimated that more than 200,000 jobs have been created in the United States in product development and manufacturing of products from university licenses, with the number increasing fairly rapidly as the licenses mature.

Intellectual property terms have become vitally important. The company wants to be assured that it can use the results of the research and that these results will not be available to their competitors. But most universities insist that transfer of research results is key to their identity and mission and will not agree to keep the project results secret. The key to resolving this dilemma is to grant patents: the university will publish the results, but will first agree to file patents that will protect the company's privilege in the commercial market place.

星期二

提纲作文写作方法（二） 阐述主题型、解决问题型

一、阐述主题型

阐述主题类作文一般需要考生按照提纲要求提出论点，通过举例等方式论证观点，最后再对论点进行总结。这类题目的写作思路是：

1. 阐述名言或主题所蕴涵的意义；
2. 分析并举例以使其更充实。

（一）阐述主题型写作思路及模板举例

1. 写作思路

第一段：主题句：提出观点

扩展句一：阐述论点中蕴涵的道理或正确性的表现。

扩展句二：进一步阐述论点中蕴涵的道理或正确性表现，或是强调论点的正确性。

第二段：列举论据

主题句：引出论据，开始论证观点。

扩展句一：列举第一个例子。

扩展句二：进一步说明例一。

扩展句三：列举第二个例子。

扩展句四：进一步说明例二。

第三段：总结观点

主题句：承接上文，重申重点。

扩展句：提出建议或指出注意事项。

结尾句：总结全文，指出正确的做法或态度，呼应论点。

2. 写作模板举例

The good old proverb（名言或谚语）reminds us that（释义）. It has a profound significance and value not only in our job but also in our study. Indeed, we can learn many things from it.

There are numerous examples supporting this argument. First of all,（理由一）. For example,（举例说明）. Secondly,（理由二）. Another case is that（举例说明）. Furthermore,（理由三）.

All the above-mentioned tell us that / It is no doubt that / Judging from the evidence offered, we might safely draw the conclusion that 重申观点。提出建议或指出注意事项。总结全文，呼

应论点: If you understand it and apply it to your study or work, you'll necessarily benefit a lot from it.

(二) 经典范例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic *Haste Makes Waste*. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 为什么说“欲速则不达”?
2. 试举例说明。

写作步骤分析:

分析题目可知, 这篇文章的写作目的是要通过举例论证来说明“欲速则不达”这一观点。

列出提纲, 点出每段的主要内容。

第一段: 提出观点, 分析欲速则不达的含义, 指出其中蕴藏的真理。

第二段: 列举出若干例证来支持观点, 比如: 揠苗助长的寓言、填塞式教育方式所造成的不良后果。

第三段: 总结全文, 再度重申欲速则不达的深刻含义。

参考范文

The proverb “Haste makes waste” has been widely accepted for many years. It reminds us that if we are to achieve our final goal we have to do it in a down-to-down way. The truth of it is deep and profound.

There are numerous examples supporting this argument. A case in point is the ancient Chinese story of “Helping the shoots grow by pulling”. This story proved that the haste caused not only waste but great loss. For another example, some parents and teachers, in order to improve children's academic performance in a short time, tend to put too heavy burden on children nothing but great pressure.

All the above-mentioned tells us that we shouldn't be over anxious for quick results. Everything has its own developing law. Therefore, whatever we do, we should not pay too much attention to the speed and ignore these laws.

二、解决方法型

解决方法类作文一般需要考生描述提纲中所反映的问题, 说明问题的危害和解决问题的必要性, 然后针对该问题提出应对策略或解决方法, 此类题目的写作思路是:

1. 问题现状
2. 怎样解决 (解决方案的优缺点)

(一) 解决方法型作文的写作思路及模板举例

1. 写作思路

第一段: 提出问题

主题句: 概括提出问题

扩展句一：指出问题的重要性或危害。

扩展句二：进一步阐述问题的重要性或危害。

第二段：说明方法

主题句：引出问题的解决方法或决定因素。

扩展句一：说明第一点解决方法。

扩展句二：说明第二点解决方法。

扩展句三：说明第三点解决方法。

第三段：总结评述

主题句：引出本人对该问题或解决方法的观点或选择。

扩展句：具体阐述观点或选择依据。

结尾句：作出总结或提出建议。

2. 写作模板举例

Currently, there is a widespread concern over (the issue that) _____ 作文题目 _____. It is really an important concern to every one of us. Besides/Additionally, 进一步阐述问题的重要性及危害。As a result, we must spare no efforts to take some measures to solve this problem.

As we know that there are many steps which can be taken to undo this problem. First of all, _____ 途径一 _____. In addition, another way contributing to success of the solving problem is _____ 途径二 _____. Finally, 第三点方法。

Above all, to solve the problem of _____ 作文题目 _____, we should find a number of various ways. But as far as I am concerned, I would prefer to solve the problem in this way, that is to say, _____ 方法 _____.

当提纲中要求说明问题的危害时，考生需要在第二段对其进行详细的阐述，并将解决问题的办法顺序调至第三段。因此，模板最忌讳生搬硬套，考生一定要灵活处理。

(二) 经典范例

Directions: in this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Build an Ideal Teacher-Student Relationship.**

1. 大学中的师生关系是最重要的一对关系。
2. 如何才能建立理想的师生关系。

写作步骤分析：

1. 分析题目，确定文章主题，确定每段的主题。
2. 列出提纲，明确每一段的主要内容。

第一段：引出主题，阐明建立良好的师生关系的重要性。

第二段：提出具体的方案：比如：师生之间的关系需建立在一个平等、互相尊重的基础之上。另外，老师和学生必须各司其职，尽量履行自己应尽的责任和义务，教学相长，促进双方的和谐关系。

第三段：总结全文，强调解决方案。

3. 按照提纲写作文，并进行适当的修饰和优化，拔高分数，这部分内容是下周学习的重点。

参考范文

The relationship between a teacher and a student is very important to both teachers

and students. A good teacher-student relationship will make learning enjoyable and efficient as well as make the teacher's job worthwhile. In contrast, a bad relationship will discourage the students from learning and make teaching an unpleasant task.

But how can we build an ideal teacher-student relationship? First of all, teacher and student should respect each other, which is the precondition of good relationship. Moreover, the teacher's attitude plays an important role. If the teacher is too strict, he might frighten his students; if the teacher is too permissive, the student may become lazy. As for the student, he should be eager for knowledge and willing to work hard. If he learns from his teacher modestly, he will be able to profit fully from his teacher's teaching.

In conclusion, a good teacher-student relationship needs common efforts from both the teacher and the student. And it can be mutually beneficial. The student gains knowledge eagerly and enjoyably, and the teacher gains satisfaction from his teaching job.

每日训练

1. Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Eliminate Fake Diplomas**. You should write at least 200 words and base your composition on the outline given below:

- 1) 现在社会上的假文凭屡见不鲜。
- 2) 如何杜绝假文凭现象。

2. Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Silence Is Not Always Gold**. You should write at least 150 words and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

- 1) “沉默是金”一直被很多人奉为至理名言，然而在现代社会沉默并不总是对的。
- 2) 试论证该观点。

参考范文

1

How to Eliminate Fake Diplomas

As many people know, the epidemic of fake diplomas is becoming more and more of a problem. There are many people who are defeated in the job markets by their rivals with fake diplomas. Besides, the number of illegal dealers making profits by selling fake diplomas is also on the rise. It is no doubt that how to fight against fake diplomas is worth paying more attention to.

The following ways can be adopted to eliminate fake diplomas. Firstly, companies can keep detailed information of the diploma and then check its validity with the help of Certificate Authority. Secondly, those who use fake diplomas should be punished severely. Thirdly, companies and other official departments should give more weight to the candidates' competence rather than their diplomas.

As far as I am concerned, fake diplomas is difficult to be eliminated in a short time. With the development of technology, it's harder to identify the certificates. Besides, it

needs the joint effort of the whole society. Therefore, greater attention and efforts should be paid to the cause of fighting against fake diplomas.

2

Silence Is Not Always Gold

Nowadays there are still many people who take “Silence is gold” as a doctrine. They believe silence shows one’s intelligence and inner beauty, and can reduce the possibility of involving troubles. However, indeed, in many cases, silence is not gold, especially in modern society. The following reasons can support the argument.

Undoubtedly, when our lawful rights and interests are invaded, we should not keep silence. At this time, what we should do is to open our mouth to protect ourselves. Moreover, under the increasingly fierce social competition, everyone must learn to show himself. If you always wait in the silence, the chances will not come to you automatically. In addition, in face of the immoral and illegal behaviors, your silence is timidity and selfishness.

All mentioned above tell us that silence is not always gold. Instead, sometimes silence not only cannot help us but brings a negative effect. Therefore, we should decide when and whether to keep silence according to the special circumstances.

星期三

图表作文写作方法

一、图表作文写作思路及模板举例

图表作文是较难的题型之一，近几年考博英语写作试题中时有图表题型，因此应该特别认真地对待。这类题一般要求仔细看图，根据题目要求写成自己的作文。面对此类题型，应首先确定主题，然后再动笔。看图作文也要注意审题、立意和选材。具体步骤如下：

看清作文标题和要求。

仔细观察所给图片，把握每一个细节和情节。

按时间的先后或原因的主次顺序列出短文提纲。

根据提纲组织写作，将图片所表达的意思用文字写出来。

1. 图表作文写作思路

实际上，图表作文也可以当做三段式的提纲作文来写。第一段用来描述图表并揭示其寓意（寓意一般用一句话来概括就可以），第二段分析原因，最后一段发表评论或提出建议。其中第二、三段应该是写作的重点。

第一段：主题句：准确描述图表所反映的总体现象、变化或问题。

扩展句一：概括图中显示的初期数据或情况。

扩展句二：进一步阐述图中的情况或数据的变化。

第二段：主题句：引出下文对原因的说明。

扩展句一：说明第一点的原因。

扩展句二：说明第二点的原因。

扩展句三：说明第三点的原因。

第三段：说明影响、问题或表达观点。

主题句：“我”的思考或看法。

扩展句一：第一点影响、问题或注意事项。

扩展句二：第二点影响、问题或注意事项。

结尾句：提出建议或作出展望。

2. 图表作文写作模板举例

From the chart /graph/ table/ picture, we clearly learn that 综述现象、变化或问题. 图表中初期的数据或情况. However, 图表中数据或情况的变化.

The following reasons can account for 现象、变化或问题. First of all/ To begin with, 第一点原因. What is more/moreover, 第二点原因. In addition/ Besides, 第三点原因.

From my point of view/As for me, “我” 的思考或者看法。可能的影响、问题或注意事项
一. Besides, 可能的影响、问题或注意事项二. Therefore/To conclude, 作出总结.

二、经典范例

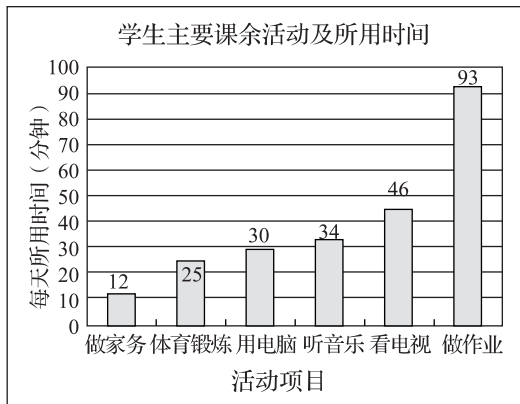
某学校对大学生课余活动进行了调查, 结果如下。请根据图表 1 提供的信息描述学生每天的课余活动, 并针对图表 2 中任何一个数据中反映的情况写出你的看法。词数 150 ~ 200 个。

1. 内容要点

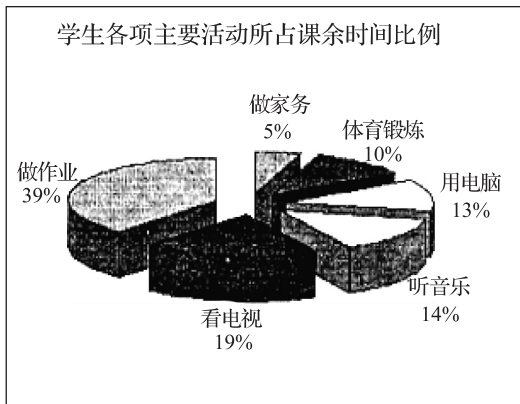
- 1) 图表 1 中六项活动及所用时间。
- 2) 图表 2 中一个数据反映的情况。
- 3) 自己的看法。

2. 说明

- 1) 内容要点可用不同方式表达。
- 2) 可以紧扣主题地适当发挥。



图表1



图表2

第一步：本图表所反映的主题

Key words:

1. The daily average amount of time, different after-class activities.
2. The Chart shows the daily average amount of time the students spend on different after-class activities.

第二步：图表 1 中六项活动及所用时间

In Chart 1, students spend 93 minutes on their homework. And watching TV takes up 46 minutes. They put in about the same amount of time listening to music and working on the computer, 34 minutes and 30 minutes each. 25 minutes is spent on sports, and only 12 minutes goes into housework.

图表 2 中一个数据反映的情况

In Chart 2, only 10% of the spare time is taken up with sports activities.

第三步：自己的看法

Problem: little time for sports

Suggestions: We should encourage students to do more exercise after class.

参考范文

Chart 1 shows the daily average amount of time students spend on different after-class activities. As Chart 1 shows, the students spend most of their time — 93 minutes — onto their homework, and next in line is watching TV, which takes up 46 minutes. They spend about the same amount of time listening to music and working on the computer, 34 minutes and 30 minutes respectively. While 25 minutes is spent on sports, only 12 minutes goes into housework.

As is shown in Chart 2, only 10% of the spare time is taken up by sports activities. I think the school and the society should encourage students to do more exercise after class. Just as a proverb goes, all work and no play make Jack a dull boy. So only when students strike a balance between studies and play, can they be healthier and more energetic.

三、图表类作文写作知识储备

(一) 图表作文中常用的词

上升: increase; rise; ascend; surge; go up; climb; mount; level up

下降: decrease; fall; drop; descend; decline; reduce; lessen; level down

平稳: stable; steady; remain / maintain / keep / be the same as / similar to

波动: fluctuate; fluctuation; the rise and fall; ups and downs

占: occupy; take up; account for; gain

而: while; however; whereas; on the other hand; actually / in fact

相比: by contrast; on the contrary; likewise; compared with

最高点: the highest point; the top; the summit; the peak; the most

最低点: bottom; least; rock bottom

平均: mean; average

趋势: tendency; trend; inclination

预见: prediction

达到顶峰: mount to

在……中占……: ... gain the percentage of

有一个稳定的过程: a stable period can be seen

(二) 图表概述或描述中常用的句型

1. According to / As can be seen from / As shown in / It is clear / apparent from the chart (图表, 曲线图) / graph (图表, 曲线图) / table (列有事实或数字的表格) / diagram (图表) / figure / statistics...

2. The chart / graph / table / diagram reveals / shows / suggests that ...

3. It can be seen from the table that ...

4. From the statistics / information given in the table / graph / chart, we can estimate / see / conclude that ...

5. The number / percentage / figure of ... almost / nearly doubled / tripled, as compared /

against those with that of last year.

6. The figure / number / percentage increased / dropped / decreased more than / almost / about six times / twice / two and a half times compared with ...

7. The percentage / number is twice / four times / half as much as that / those of 1990.

8. The rate / number was X percent, less/more than a half / third / quarter of the 1998 total.

9. By comparison with ... , it shot up / jumped / increased / rose / decreased / dropped / fell by X percent / from X to Y percent/to X percent.

10. A has almost / nearly / about / over a quarter half / twice / one third as many students as/ as much money as B.

11. During 1970 – 1999 / From 1970 to 1999 / Since 1970 / Since the early 1970s, there was / has been sudden jump / sharp rise / dramatic increase / a marked fluctuation / steady decrease / slight decline / gradual reduction / fall in ...

12. 数量总计: ... amount to ... , add up to, come to, sum up to
公司全年总收入达到 2000 万美元。

The total income of the company reached to 20 million dollars.

13) 数量增减:

(从……) 增加了……: Increase / rise / grow ... (from ...)

(从……) 减少了……: Decrease / drop / fall ... (from ...)

从……增加到……: Increase / rise / grow from ... to ...

从……减少到……: Decrease / drop / fall from ... to ...

1) 今年, 工厂的产量增加了 5 万吨。

The production of this plant has increased 50, 000 tons this year.

2) 参加者的人数增加到 30 万。

The number of participants grew up to / increased to / reached to 300, 000 persons.

3) 这个学校的教职工人数已减少到了 80 人。

The number of teaching staff in this school has decreased to 80 persons.

每日训练

1. Directions: The table below gives information about changes in modes of travel in England between 1985 and 2000. Summaries the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Average distance in miles travelled per person per year, by mode of travel

Mode of Travel	In 1985	In 2000
Walking	255	237
Bicycle	51	41
Car	3, 199	4, 806
Local Bus	429	274
Long Distance Bus	54	124
Train	289	366

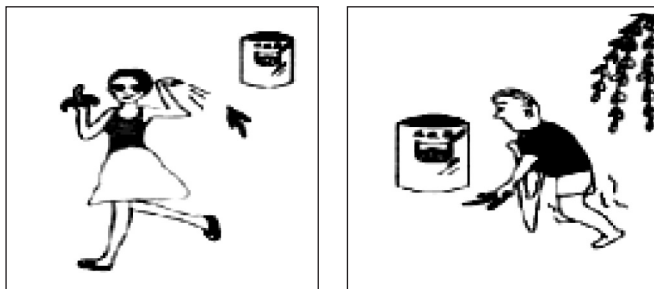
(续)

Mode of Travel	In 1985	In 2000
Taxi	13	42
Other	450	585
All Modes	4, 740	6, 475

2. Directions: Study the following set of cartoons carefully and write an essay in which you should

- 1) describe the cartoons,
- 2) interpret its meaning,
- 3) point out its implications in our life.

You should write about 160-200 words neatly on *ANSWER SHEET 2*. (20 points)



美丽不是表面的

参考译文

1 The table demonstrates how different modes of travel changed in England in 15 _____ years spanning from 1985 to 2000. In general, the modes are classified into two kinds in terms of average miles travelled per person per year: one enjoyed rising popularity while the other decreasing.

The travel modes which gained popularity in the period included cars, long distance buses, trains, taxis and others. Cars remained top among the modes in the 15 years, with its average miles increasing considerably from 3, 199 in 1985 to 4, 806 in 2000. Long distance buses and taxis seemed to be warmly welcomed by travelers, so average miles travelled in the two modes almost tripled.

Travels by walking, bicycles and local buses lost travelers' favor in the one and a half decade. Average travelling distance by local buses suffered the biggest decrease, dropping from 429 to 274, whilst the number of miles by walking and bikes fell mildly from 255 to 237 and from 51 to 41 respectively. Despite the decreases, however, the total miles travelled grew from 4, 740 to 6, 475.

In brief, the total travelling distance in the country grew in 15 years when cars, long distance buses, trains, taxis and other modes of travel were more popular and walking, bicycling and local transportation less popular.

2 In the above cartoons, a young woman happily eats bananas and casually discards the peels on the street, unaware of the fact that such actions not only pollute the environment but also pose a danger to others. In the next illustrations a disabled man struggles to properly dispose of the trash she has left behind. Despite the girl's youth and beauty, it is the disabled man who is truly beautiful. True beauty comes from one's actions rather than one's appearance.

While most of us enjoy pretty appearances, it is more important to cultivate a clean and beautiful soul. Only such souls can create a genuinely beautiful society.

Chinese traditionally uphold the virtues of modesty, generosity, broad-mindedness, and politeness. Confucian teachings such as: "Do not do to others as you would not want done to you" and "One should be delighted to hear criticism" are wise and worthwhile. If people embody these teachings, our society can only improve and progress.

The thoughts of great minds like Confucius are also worth studying. His writings set fine and noble examples for us to follow. Another proverb thus comes to mind: in the company of three one always can find a teacher. We should always be willing and able to learn from those around us.

一、什么是情景作文

所谓情景作文就是考生根据所提供的有关信息，充分发挥想象力而写出的切情切景、传神达意的文章。考博书面表达是考查考生是否能够在一定的时间内利用所提供的情景，运用所学过的英语知识和掌握的技巧进行书面交流，从而考查考生综合运用英语的能力。

考博书面表达的情景包括目的、对象、时间、地点、内容等；提供情景的形式有文字、提纲等，涉及的内容贴近考生实际生活，与考生的日常生活息息相关，这使考生有话可说，体现了人文关怀。书面表达在体裁上的要求多种多样，有根据提纲写作的，有在叙述两种比较对立的观点后阐明自己的观点的，有根据条件（或来函）写（复）信的，有将对话改写为短文的等。

二、如何写好情景作文

1. 紧扣情景

既然是情景作文，写作时首先应把自己置身于此情此景之中，围绕规定的情景，展开思维的翅膀，去体会和感受。虽说有时内容可以有所突破，但却不能漫无边际地任意发挥，规定要写的东西必须写入文章中，不能遗漏。

2. 认真审题

审题是高质量书面表达的前提。审题首先就是辨认体裁，确定格式。不同体裁的应用文写作都有其固定格式及要求，认准了体裁也就完成了一半任务。如口头通知的格式就非常固定，考生只要牢记一两篇优秀的范文，考试时把与范文不同的主题、时间、地点等换掉就形成一篇不错的文章了。

其次，审题时还必须根据不同的体裁来确定人称和时态。不同体裁的文章有时其时态也是相对固定的，比如，写日记或叙述故事时多用过去时，而陈述两种不同观点时则通常用现在时。

3. 列出关键词，写出主题句

根据内容提要，在草稿纸上列出关键词。如果情景是用英语提供的，则要注意从规定的情景中找出关键词，结合情景充分利用这些关键词进行主题句的写作。如果情景是用汉语提供的，则中文的关键词也必须在作文中体现出来，但切不可不作任何发挥，仅逐字逐

句地翻译情景。主题句必须是用自己最熟悉、最有把握的词和短语组成的句子。

4. 组织段落

根据情景提供的信息,按一定的逻辑顺序和意义层次安排并划分文章的自然段落,注意段落之间的发展和连贯。

5. 加工润色

尽量避免过多地重复使用同一单词或短语,尽量使用不同长度的句子,使句型多样化。适当使用连接技巧,使句子间的衔接自然流畅。

连接技巧的恰当使用有以下3种方式:

连接技巧1:使用过渡词(语)

根据心理语言学的理论,因为人的大脑受短时记忆容量的限制,大脑在处理信息时会不时地回顾刚处理过的信息和预测即将接收的信息,所以输入大脑的信息必须保持平稳、一致,这样才有利于大脑对信息的回顾和预测,从而减轻其短时记忆的负荷,加快信息处理速度。比如,说话人的话题跳跃性大,东拉西扯,听话人理解起来就会很费力;在没有上下文的情况下,非常突兀的一句话就让人难以理解。过渡词(语)突显了句子与句子之间、句子意义之间、句子部分与部分之间的语义逻辑关系,这样有利于读者的大脑对信息的回顾与观测。

例如: first 一词就预示了 second, 反之, second 一词有助于回顾前面刚处理过的信息 first; 同样 preliminary 预测了其后续会有 further 或 deeper 等一类表示程度加深的词; finally 一词提示读者陈述过程的结束等。

常用的过渡词除了有表示时间、空间、因果、举例、递增、顺序、比较、对照的词之外,还有:

表示让步: after all, nevertheless, although, though, as a matter of fact, even though, in spite of, naturally

反对或限定上文观点: but, nevertheless, otherwise, on the other hand, conversely, on the contrary, however, yet, still

复述: briefly, that is to say, in fact, indeed, in other words

连接技巧2:使用指代、替代词(语)

除了过渡词(语)之外,语篇中的指代、替代词(语)也起到保持信息平稳的作用。如:

John saw a handbag in the field. He picked it up, took it to the Police Station, and handed it in as lost property. After this, he went home.

约翰在地上看见一个手提包,捡了起来,送到警察局,交给失物招领处,然后回了家。

本段用代词 he, it 和 this, 来避免重复相同信息,使这几句话组成前后呼应、结构连贯的段落。除了代词,所有具有指代和替代功能的词(语)都具有避免重复相同信息,保持信息连贯性的作用。

连接技巧3:重复关键词,或使用关键词的同义词、反义词、上义词、下义词

重复关键词可使句子之间的因果关系清楚了,读起来有连贯性,起到强调作用。除了关键词完全重复,同义表达也可有这种效果。使用关键词的同义词、反义词、上义词、下义词也可以达到连接句子关系的效果。它们在文章中交替出现,突出关键词,使文章的语言变得丰富多彩,行文流畅。

此外,近几年来,考博书面表达的要求已有明显变化,虽然还是以情景作文为主,但要求已由原来的将情景材料直接翻译成英文转变为夹叙夹议或既有说明又要议论的集情景

作文与开放性作文为一体的英文写作，这给考生自由发挥的空间大了，但难度明显提高了。因此，要提高书面表达能力，除了掌握一定的写作技巧外，更重要的是平时要做到以下几点：

- 一要注重基础知识的积累。要加强语言基础知识的学习和训练，熟练掌握单词、词组、句型及其用法，尤其是固定搭配和特殊用法，掌握基础语法知识，并在实际写作中熟练运用。
- 二要正确处理读和写的关系。大量的阅读不仅能够增加词汇量，更能培养英语语感，语感增强了，表达能力就自然而然地提高了，语言也就更地道了。
- 三要勤练。平时要多用英语写作（如写日记等），永远不要忘记“熟能生巧”这个道理。

三、经典范例

例 1：请根据以下提示写一篇 150 个词左右的短文，并阐明自己对新放假办法的看法。

2007 年 12 月 16 日，国务院正式公布从 2008 年 1 月 1 日起实行新的放假办法。新办法取消了五一黄金周，保留十一国庆节和春节两个黄金周，将春节放假的起始时间由农历年正月初一调整为除夕，增加清明、端午、中秋为法定假日。国家法定假期由原来的 10 天增加到了 11 天。新的方案宣布后，大多数参与网上调查的人表示赞成，但也有人反对取消五一黄金周表示不满，认为这会使国庆和春节期间交通更加拥挤。

参考词汇：

国务院 the State Council

取消 scrap v.

清明节 Tomb-Sweeping Day

端午节 Dragon-Boat Festival

中秋节 Mid-Autumn Festival

分析：这是一篇夹叙夹议的作文，主要由三部分组成：一是国务院公布新的放假办法，二是接受调查的网民对该办法的看法，三是本人的观点。具体写作时应注意以下几点：

把文章的三部分分为三个自然段；

由于文章的内容是国务院文件及陈述观点，因此其主体时态应为现在时；

虽然第三部分考生有话可说，但由于有词数限制，考生在发表自己的观点时应抓住重点，不要过度发挥。

参考范文

On December 16th, 2007, the State Council officially announced that the new holiday plan would come into effect on January 1, 2008. The new plan has scrapped May Day golden week but retained the National Day and Spring Festival golden week holidays. The Spring Festival golden week starts one day earlier from the eve of the Lunar New Year. Three traditional festivals — Tomb-Sweeping Day, Dragon-Boat Festival and Mid-Autumn Festival — are added to the list of public holidays. The plan also increases the total number of national holidays from 10 to 11. The majority of people surveyed online are in favor of the new holiday plan but other people are dissatisfied with the scrapping of May Day golden week, believing that it will make the other two golden week holidays more

crowded.

I am for the new plan because the change is environmentally friendly and will help to protect our traditional cultural heritage.

例2: 请根据以下内容写一篇150个词左右的短文, 陈述事实, 并就雪灾造成严重损失的原因及应采取的预防措施发表自己的看法。

2008年1月, 我国21个省市自治区遭受了50年来最严重的暴雪灾害。雪灾造成道路中断, 航班被取消, 大量房屋被压塌, 电线被压断, 水管被冻裂。据民政部统计, 190多万名旅客曾一度被滞留在车站和机场, 全国数千万人的生活受到极大影响, 并有107人在雪灾中死亡, 直接经济损失高达1110多亿元。

参考词汇:

省市自治区 provinces, municipalities and autonomous regions

压塌 be crushed

滞留 be stranded

参考范文

In January 2008, 21 provinces, municipalities and autonomous regions in our country were hit by the worst snowstorms in 50 years. The snowstorms caused great damages. Roads were cut and flights cancelled. A lot of houses were crushed, power lines broken and water pipes frozen. According to the Ministry of Civil Affairs, over 1.9 million travelers were stranded at airports and stations at some point. Tens of millions of people's lives were affected nationwide. What's worse, 107 people were killed in the disaster and the direct economic losses amounted to as much as 111 billion yuan.

In my opinion, there were two main causes for the disaster: one was of course the extreme weather and the other was that we hadn't been prepared for such bad weather. So to prevent similar disasters from happening again, I think we should improve our ability to forecast the weather, get well prepared in advance and react quickly once anything bad really happens.

四、情景作文知识储备之——常用句型

- 1) ... is becoming a serious problem. This is because...
- 2) If possible, one may... . There are many examples of ...
- 3) I never think... is a waste of time and money, because it is something that I truly wanted in my life.
- 4) Further more ... is the by-product of... , so we should...
- 5) As for me, this should not be...
- 6) To be frank, I would like to support...
- 7) We have no reason to believe that...
- 8) It is one thing to insist that... , it is quite another to show that ...
- 9) Recently the issue of... has been brought to public attention.
- 10) It is high time that we put considerable emphasis on...

11) Aside from that, all laws and regulations against the pollution should be forcefully implemented.

12) For now the world has a more urgent mission: to stop the planet from overheating, and do it in a hurry.

13) Over the past decade, the issue of... has risen to the top of the agenda.

每日训练

1. Directions: It is known that more and more universities in China are seeking to increase their enrollment. As a result, more than ever universities are becoming career-oriented. Write a composition “University: Where Will You Go?” with 300 words to give your comment.

Topic: University: Where Will You Go?

2. Directions: In this part, you are required to write a composition on the topic “Public Transportation” for at least 250 words.

参考范文

1

University: Where Will You Go?

Since the year 1999, a lot of problems have been emerging with Chinese universities increasing their enrollment. For instance, universities are becoming more career-oriented than ever before. More professional education courses have been added into the curricula and many lectures have been held to enrich the students' interview skills. It seems that the students will have a brilliant future. However, the fact is that the administrative proficiency in dealing with students' affairs has declined and the employment of graduates has become more and more difficult.

Apart from the statements above, in my opinion, we'll confront more problems if all universities become career-training centers. Universities are places in which students learn traditional and modern civilizations of our country. Our country has a civilization of more than five thousand years, which is an envy of people all over the world. And modern civilization has brought about fundamental changes to the world. Students should be familiar with both kinds of civilization. But if universities became career-training centers and neglected their duties of spreading civilization, what would happen? Besides, as we all know, science and technology have become the first productive forces. In order to develop our country, we have to pay much attention to scientific study. There are a lot of important scientific studies that are carried out in universities. However, if universities all became career-oriented, students certainly will be in defect of some fundamental knowledge about scientific study. In such situations, how can we continue carrying out the researches and experiments?

From what has been discussed above, we may safely draw the conclusion that universities should not pay too much attention to career education. They should also attach importance to other education. Only in this way can universities become more

successful and our country become more prosperous.

2

Public Transportation

As part of domestic modernization, public transportation needs to be developed urgently in China. I can illustrate some examples.

There does not only exist serious traffic jams but also crowded buses, underground and railways. Commuters find it hard to get to work on time due to overcrowded buses or tubes. Travelers could hardly get on buses in big cities during weekends owing to fewer buses and more people. When Spring Festival is drawing near, there is much greater pressure on public transportation since it has to deal with a large number of travelers rushing home. And travelers need special arrangements to go home. In a word, public transportation has become bottleneck to the advance of Chinese economy.

To solve the above-mentioned problems, the departments concerned should carry out the following steps: to build more roads, highways or railways and to add buses or trains to the original lines. But there funds have to be raised both from the government and the public.

There are three sources for fund raising. One is to raise the fares for all kinds of all transportation vehicles. Another is to increase the prices for various vehicles on sale. The third is to raise the prices of petrol and diesel oil in addition to the governmental funds. If all this money to raise the prices of petrol and diesel oil in addition to the governmental funds. If all this money collected is used to improve transportation services, the situation will be bettered and favorable.

The third step to take is to introduce new technology in order to raise the efficiency of vehicles. For instance, the speed of trains can be increased as much as two times so that two times as many people can be held. In this way, the pressure on public transportation can be dramatically alleviated. In a word, we need to introduce new technology to raise the speed of vehicles while having built even wider roads and added more efficient trains.

星期五

应用文写作方法（一）

应用文写作包括简历、通知、书信等的写作。而书信的写作是考博英语应用文写作的重点。书信中，公务信件是重中之重。公务信件主要有：求职信、投诉信、邀请信、建议信、询问信、感谢信、道歉信、推荐信8种。下面我们来逐一学习。

一、求职信

写作提示

求职信的目的就是把自己推销给雇主，需要毫不保留地展示自己的才能，又不能弄虚作假。其基本内容包括：事由，即求职的原因；个人简介；对所求职位及雇主的看法和认识，以及就职打算等。

写作策略

开头段：表明信息来源，说明写作意图。

主体段：介绍自己相关的工作经历、学习经历，以此证明你能胜任这个职位。

参考范文

（信头、信内地址略）

Dear Miss Du,

I am greatly interested by the vacancy of tour guide you advertised on yesterday's issue of *Touring China*. I am presently a student learning for my BA in International Tourism at Beijing Institute of Tourism.

Though I am still a student, I am pretty experienced in the work of a tour guide. I have accompanied five groups of Chinese tourists to the USA, visiting places like New York, Washington, Los Angeles, the Great Canyon, Las Vegas, the Great Lakes and lots of national parks and nature reserves, also to other countries like Canada and Australia. I have also been a part-time tour guide for various international travel agencies in Beijing. Miss Catherine of the Commercial Travel Agency and Miss Zhao of China International Travel Agency will welcome a call from you for more information about me. They could be reached at 555, 0808, ext. 200 and 555, 7799 respectively.

In Beijing Institute of Tourism, I have been making the roll for all the semesters. I am

extremely interested in my major and was reading extensively on my major. I consider as my advantage to be speaking English almost without any accent. Besides, I am excellent in people skills, and hard-working, as what could be required by the job. For more information about me, please call Mr. Robert at 555, 9905.

I will be available for an interview in every afternoon. Please contact me at 555, 9908, ext. Room 305, or P. O. Box 305, Beijing Institute of Tourism, 100064.

Thank you for your consideration.

Sincerely yours,
Li Ming

二、投诉信

写作提示

当你希望某事得到改善或者某个问题得到补救时，往往会写投诉信。投诉信要写明投诉的原因以及你对此事所带来不便的感受和心情；提出你对如何改进或者解决问题的建议，清楚表明你希望问题如何得到解决；表达你希望上述问题得到迅速解决的强烈愿望，并对有关人员作出的努力表示感谢，希望尽快得到满意的答复。

写作策略

开头段：说明与收信人的相关性，点明你写信的意图。

主体段：写明投诉的原因，要展开说明，或者讲具体理由，或者谈问题的具体体现方式。

结束段：表达你希望上述问题得到尽快解决的强烈愿望，并对有关人员作出的努力表示感谢。

参考范文

Dear Sir,

In company with many other college students who live off campus, I have to use the bus service to go to class every day. I say “have to” because for a long time the service has been unreliable, unpunctual and uncomfortable, but we regular travelers have been putting up with these faults because there is no alternative means of public transport to my college.

However, there are limits to a traveler's patience and I passed well beyond those limits yesterday morning on the No. 10 bus. To begin with, the bus kept me waiting for more than 30 minutes at the stop of the zoo. Then there occurred an unscheduled stop of five minutes at a signal. Just as the bus seemed to be running at the normal speed, there was a flat tire, and it took the driver half an hour to change one of the front wheels. As a result, I was already 40 minutes late for class. It would be interesting to see how the City Bus Company explains this sort of inefficiency, which is all too common. I would like to ask you to consider improving your service if you agree that the customer is king.

Yours truly,
Li Ming

三、邀请信

写作提示

邀请信是指邀请某人共进午餐、晚餐、茶会，参加宴会、聚会、舞会、婚礼，看电影、戏剧等各种活动。书写时应注意：邀请信一定要将邀请的时间（年、月、日、钟点）、地点、场合写清楚，不能使接信人存在任何疑虑。

写作策略

开头段：表明写作意图，向某人发出邀请。

主体段：说明邀请的具体原因，邀请的内容。

结束段：表明强烈的期盼，并希望尽快得到答复。

参考范文1

Dear John,

Our class is planning a dinner party to celebrate the twentieth anniversary of Professor Wang Ming's teaching at Xinxin Hotel, on 368 Yan'an Road, Dong Cheng District. It's next Saturday, May 15th, at six o'clock in the evening. You can take a cab or take bus route Number 12 in front of our university. Most of our classmates have promised to show up, and we hope you can come as well. Please don't forget to bring your video camera to the party. You are also welcome to bring your girl friend Mary with you. We hope you can make it.

Yours,
Li Ming

参考范文2

Dear Dr. Rodger,

The English Department of AAFE would like to extend to you an invitation to be our guest speaker at the annual conference to be held at the meeting room at eight o'clock, Saturday morning, December 30th, 1996.

As you know, the department is interested in the 20th century English literature. Since you are a well-established professor and a well-acknowledged expert in the field, we know your views will be much appreciated and interesting to us.

You will receive further details later, but we would appreciate having your acceptance soon so we may complete our agenda. Please inform us at your earliest convenience.

Cordially,
Li Ming

四、求学信

写作提示

求学信与求职信同属于申请信，是常见的正式信函类型。求学信，通常称为个人陈述，其目的是打动所申请就读学校的领导和教授，以获得录取资格。其内容大致包括：事由，

即申请就读该校的原因；个人简介（包括学业、工作经历、社会经历、性格、兴趣爱好等，表现自己综合和特别的才能）；对所申请的学校、专业以及教授的认识和看法以及对该专业今后所针对的职业的打算等。

写作策略

开头段：开门见山写明你写此信的原因、报考专业，并明确拟入学时间。

主体段：简要介绍自己的受教育情况、外语水平（如 TOEFL 和 GRE 的成绩）及经济来源（经济来源也可在后期的信件中再提）。

结束段：索要材料及盼望回复。

参考范文

Dear Professor Hedlund,

I have read the annual prospectus issued by your school and found that it has the best graduate program of education studies, which you are currently presiding over. I am greatly interested in the program and hope that I could do my doctor degree under your instruction.

I am working at the education department of Beijing Normal University as the director of the program of psychological studies. I have developed my people skills as well as the abilities in conducting group work in psychological researches. Also, I have learned to appreciate the spirit of experiment that is supremely important in my work. I hope I could update my knowledge for a better career. I graduated from the same university four years ago as an MA in juvenile psychology. In college I took such courses as juvenile psychology, American psychological studies, history of psychology, higher education administration and other psychological studies. My English is excellent as two of my college years were spent in the States.

I have interests in a wide range of fields, such as history, music, philosophy, sports and travel. I was major members of several campus clubs including Flyer's Disciples, Tomorrow of China's Education and Skinner's Lab.

Two of my former professors and the present dean of our department have kindly written letters of recommendation for me, as enclosed with this letter.

I would be very grateful if you could send me the necessary forms and any information about financial aid in your program.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Sincerely yours,
Li Ming

每日训练

1. Directions: Write a letter of invitation about 100 words to your close friend Tom, asking him to come and stay for a weekend with your family at your riverside cottage:

- (a) you have not seen him for a long time,
- (b) the country air will do him good,

- (c) he can catch a train after work on Friday,
- (d) you ask him to let you know the time of his arrival,
- (e) you will meet him at the station.

2. Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **A Job Application Letter**. You should write at least 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

假定你是李明，是北京外国语大学（Beijing Foreign Studies University）英语专业的一名学生。你在 *China Daily* 上看到一则招聘广告：Microsoft China 要招聘口译员。你认为自己符合条件，请写一封申请信。

参考范文

1 Dear Tom,
— How time flies! We haven't seen each other for almost half a year. How are you recently? I hope everything goes well.

I'm writing to invite you to come to my riverside cottage for a weekend with my family. You have been here once and must still remember the amazing environment, right? I'm sure that the country air will do you good and make you energetic. You can catch a train after work on Friday. And do tell me the time of your arrival in advance. Then I can meet you at the station.

Looking forward to your arrival!

Yours,
x x x

2

A Job Application Letter

June 20, 2009

To whom it may concern,

I am writing to apply for the post of engineer advertised in *China Daily*. I believe my qualifications are an ideal match of your requirements.

I will graduate on July 1st of this year from Dongbei University. My major in mechanical engineering and my training in this aspect definitely meet your requirements. In addition to learning the required courses, I have also accepted training in Professional Training Program at spare time. What's more, I have been an intern student in several companies related to my major, which provided me a great deal of experience in computer applications. I believe my training and experience will enable me to perform better than other candidates who are lack of working experience.

I would appreciate your time in reviewing my enclosed resume and if there is any additional information you require, please contact me. I will be very grateful if you can give me a personal interview at your convenience.

Sincerely yours,
Li Hua

星期六

应用文写作方法（二）

一、询问信

写作提示

询问信主要目的是寻求所需的信息或寻求帮助。这类信要写明自己的意图以及要求对方办的事，也可以向对方索取有关资料。

写作策略

开头段：明确写信的目的，说明写这封信的目的是寻求某信息或寻求帮助。

主体段：询问具体问题，强调所需信息的重要性。

结束段：表达获取信息的强烈愿望，提供联系方式以便收信人与你联系，并对有关人员表示感谢。

参考范文

Dear Dennis,

How are you getting on in Harvard? I hope everything is going well and you are enjoying studies. I am writing to ask you for some information as I am planning to come and study in the US next year. I have applied to Harvard to take the courses finance.

Could you tell me what I have to do to obtain a study visa and how long it will take? The university said that I also have to take out insurance before I come to the US. How do I do this? I'd be grateful if you could give me this information. I would also be thankful if you could tell me what I should bring with me, for example, clothes, books, or anything else I cannot get in the US.

I am sure that studying in a college overseas has not been without at least some problems with you. Adapting to a new culture and environment was probably also a tough job. Have you had any problems that I should watch out for? I'd appreciate any advice you can give me.

Best regards,
Li Ming

二、感谢信

写作提示

在西方国家，如果得到某人的馈赠、关怀、照顾，都应该表示感谢；当你在亲友处或朋友处小住一段时间，离开后，应向对方表示感谢；对亲友、邻居的照顾或任何善意的行为，都应表示感谢；在生日或节日前后，收到礼物，不论礼品价值如何，应表示感谢。在对馈赠礼物的感谢信中，要提到具体的礼物，不要写 Thanks for the beautiful gift，而应写成 Thanks for the beautiful watch。同时将礼物是何等的适宜与精美等加以赞赏，以显示出送礼人独具慧眼。这样会使送礼人感到高兴。在英美国家，礼物上常附有一张写着送礼人姓名的卡片。

写作策略

开头段：明确写信的目的，说明为什么要感谢，清楚表述具体事实。

主体段：写清对方给你带来的好处。

结束段：再次表示感谢和问候。

参考范文1

Dear Professor Green,

Many thanks for the great favor you did me by writing the reference letter, and the kind interest you took in me. I am glad to inform you that by your invaluable recommendation, I have obtained the position I applied for. This is a position that I have been interested in for a long time and your reference letter has definitely played a significant role in my successful application.

I shall exert my best efforts in performing my duties, and try to be worthy of your assistance.

Best regards.

Respectfully yours,
Li Ming

参考范文2

Dear John,

I am writing to tell you how grateful I am for all you did for me during my stay in your home last weekend. That's a delightful stay.

Your home is wonderful, your meals delicious, and your little dog lovely, and I enjoyed the fun and companionship very much. I am still thinking about it and enjoying it in retrospect.

Many thanks again for your warm hospitality. Please say hello to your wife and the dog. We are planning a party soon and will let you know when a date is set.

With best regards!

Sincerely,
Li Ming

三、道歉信

写作提示

因过失或疏忽做错了事,给亲人、同事、朋友带来了麻烦或损失,写道歉信是一种较随意又给对方以真诚感的方式。这类信要讲清楚道歉事由,给对方带来的损失和不方便,自己的内心感受和补救方式,尤其要表达自己的内疚心情。用词不能夸张,应坦率、诚恳,以取得对方的谅解。

写作策略

开头段及主题段:诚恳说明造成对方不快的原因,表示歉意,请予以理解、见谅,并阐述自己正在尽可能弥补的措施。

结束段:再次表示歉意。

参考范文

Dear Catherine,

I'm very sorry to tell you that, by accident, the cover of the dictionary you lent me was stained while I was making coffee. Yesterday I went to the bookstore in order to get another copy so that I could return a new copy to you, but to my disappointment, I failed to find it. Would you please wait another few days till I find a new copy? And could you tell me where did you buy the dictionary so that I can buy a new one to return to you?

I do apologize for my carelessness and the inconvenience I bring to you.

Yours sincerely,

Li Ming

四、推荐信

写作提示

推荐信主要是由有身份、地位的人士向学校或雇主介绍求学或求职者,是一种证明。推荐信在西方国家是求职、求学的必备材料。除了请别人推荐,也可以自荐。推荐信主要内容包括:事由,即推荐何人做什么事;与被推荐者的关系;对被推荐者的介绍等,一般包括以下三个内容:

1. 说明推荐人与被荐人的关系、熟识程度等。
2. 概述被荐人的品质、能力、性格等。
3. 建议招聘人或学校录用或录取。

推荐信上应提供推荐人的工作单位、地址、电话等以便对方联系,签名后必须注明职称或学衔。

写作策略

开头段:介绍自己,并表明自己的态度和写作目的,说明自己乐意推荐某人,也可以同时说明与被推荐人的关系。如师生关系就可写为:我极为高兴地推荐我的学生×××进入贵公司担任×××职务。

主体段:介绍被推荐人的人品、能力、性格特点等。这是推荐信的重点内容,要表达得精练、客观、准确,同时体现出推荐人的个人倾向。

结束段:建议用人单位或学校对被推荐人的申请予以重点考虑、聘用或录取被推荐人,

并对用人单位或学校接受自己的推荐表示谢意。

参考范文1

Mr. Wang,

Mr. Fan Zheng was enrolled as a student in my Juvenile Psychology course at Beijing Normal University in 1992. His performance in the school years was outstanding. Mr. Zheng had been the major speaker for my class discussion and he showed great talents in solving real problems and organizing his thoughts. He was clearly born with a keen mind for the science of psychology and was always coming up with original ideas. He can also express himself effectively in both spoken and written English, thanks to his interests in English and his experience in USA as an exchange student for two years.

In addition, Mr. Zheng has a very pleasant personality. He has developed a strong sense of humor that attracts people around him, and working with him is always pretty much fun. But he is absolutely hard-working, often being the core of a group. Besides, he has all the qualities of being a group leader, which include his introduction of himself in a low profile and being a man of his words.

I have no doubt that Mr. Zheng will be an ideal candidate for the doctorate studies under your instruction. I strongly recommend him to your attention.

Sincerely yours,

Li Ming
Professor of Psychology
President of Beijing Normal University

参考范文2

Dear Sir,

I wish to apply for a position with your publishing house. I'm 35 years old and am at present employed by World Publishing House, where I have been for the past five years. Formerly I was employed by Dongfang Press where I was nearly five years.

My only reason for leaving either those positions would be to better myself and I feel there is no further opportunity in my present position.

The editorial work has always had a great appeal to me as I have some ability in writing and editorial work.

I can give you references from both these publishing houses as to my character and ability as an editor.

Truly yours,
Li Ming

每日训练

1. Directions: Please write a letter about 150 English words in the following condition.

You work as a general secretary of an academic society and in July 25-29, 2005, the society will have a meeting. Your letter is supposed to be written to every member of the

society to tell them:

- A. the time and place to attend the meeting,
- B. the topics at the meeting,
- C. expenses,
- D. accommodations.

2. Directions: Write a letter to your university library, making suggestions for improving its service. You should write about 100 words on **ANSWER SHEET**.

Do not sign your own name at the end of the letter. Use “Li Ming” instead.

Do not write the address.

参考范文

1 Dear Sir,

I am the general secretary of PE academic society. It is my great honor to write to you and invite you to attend a meeting named “Science and Society” held by us. Since we know you are a passionate and professional person in this field, we will appreciate very much of your presence.

The meeting will be held in Beijing Hotel, from 25 to 29, this month. We will mainly focus on the relationship between social and science development. We will be in charge of everything including lodging and accommodation. So if you have some special requirements about eating or abode, please inform us as soon as possible, and then we can make some arrangement for you. All the service will be free of charge.

Please give us your reply at your convenient time and we sincerely hope your attendance.

Best wishes for you.

Yours,
Li Ming

2 Dear Sir or Madam,

The purpose of this letter is to make some suggestions for improving the service of our university library. It has developed very well over the last few years in providing access to computer and CD ROM's, as well as printing facilities, and free online access. However, our library will become better if it can make some progress by taking the following measures.

First of all, the staff members of the library are not as hospitable as expected. Some of them even keep a stone face in front of the students. Furthermore, the studying room should provide more seats, because it is not spacious enough and I always have to spend a long time to find myself a seat. Last but not least, most undergraduate students complain that they can only borrow two items for a time. The figure should be increased to at least five due to studying needs.

I sincerely wish that my advice would be taken into full account. Your early reply is appreciated.

Yours sincerely,
Li Ming

星期日

本周测试

Test 1

Directions: Write a composition on the title “My View on the Post-Graduate Craze” based on the following outline. Your composition should be in no less than 200 English words. Please write your composition on the **Answer Sheet**.

Topic: My View on the Post-Graduate Craze

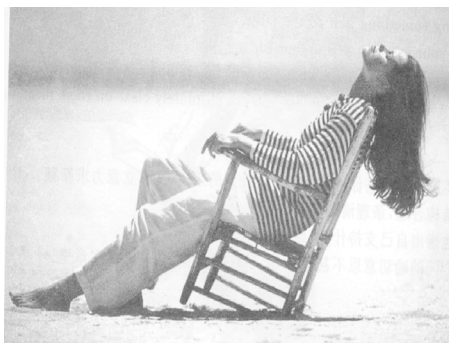
Outline:

1. 目前考研究生形成热潮。
2. 我认为这股热潮的原因是……

Test 2

Directions: Write a composition based on the following picture. Please detail what you can find in the picture and write down what you think of from the picture. Your composition should be in no less than 200 English words. Please write your composition on the **Answer Sheet**.

Topic: How You Like to Relax



Test 3

Directions: Write an essay of at least 250 words based on the following passage. Your writing should include the author's idea, your argument and supporting details.

My View of Lunar New Year

Test 4

Directions: Write a composition of no fewer than 200 words on ONE of the three topics

below within half an hour. Please write the composition on the Answer Sheet.

With the coming of globalization, cross-cultural communication will be increasingly important. In your opinion, what will be the future trends of the Chinese Culture?

The Future Trends of Chinese Culture

参考范文

Test 1

Every year, millions of college students will sit in for the post-graduate entrance examination. More and more students have regarded the pursuing of a master degree as an indispensable part of their education. What is to account for their enthusiasm for a post-graduate diploma?

First, it is the demand of the time. In an age of knowledge updating and information explosion, what you have learned in college can hardly meet the demand of society. Talents of high quality who are equipped with the latest knowledge and skill will be needed more than ever. That is why many students will further their studies.

Second, we all recognize that the more education you have, the more likely you are to succeed. Compared with those without a master degree, masters will enjoy more preferential treatment, for example, better salaries, more opportunities for promotion and training. A post-graduate degree can guarantee a more promising career.

Last but not least, with the graduation of a large number of college students, competition for jobs becomes more and more fierce. One way to gain some advantage over others is to have a higher degree.

No wonder millions of students will consider pursuing a post-graduate degree.

Test 2

In the picture a young woman relaxing on a wonderful beach, with the perfect union of white sand, a deep blue ocean and a cloudless light blue sky. Her light clothing conveys the perfect temperature. Her almost unconscious position speaks of the deep relaxation she experiences in this peaceful landscape.

There is no doubt that environment is a key to fulfilling relaxation. To give an example of this I will refer to a personal anecdote. I find that I feel most at ease in a park playing games with my friends, in a forest camping and hiking, or at a lake playfully swimming. Relaxation is a key to a healthy and balanced life. Doctors report that stress may be linked to many life threatening physical problems such as heart and immune problems. It is also of vital importance to one's mental health, warding off anxiety, needless worry and mental exhaustion.

My point is best conveyed by the popular American idiom, "All work and no play, makes Jack a dull boy."

Test 3

My View of Lunar New Year

To Chinese people, the Lunar New Year is undoubtedly the most important festival of the year. Dating back 3,000 years, it celebrates the passing of a peaceful year and to

welcome a new one.

The reunion dinner, eaten on New Year's Eve, is *derigueur* with members of the extended family gathering for the most significant meal of the year. Even the absentee members would endeavor to return home in time for it. It underscores the supreme importance of the family in Chinese culture, and aimed at strengthening the sense of togetherness and cohesion.

However, with rapid economic expansion and growing westernization, over time, there has been a noticeable erosion, if not abandonment, of the New Year traditions and customs, which are perceived to be out of step with modern lifestyle. Increasingly, more Chinese would hold their reunion dinner in posh restaurants, despite the exorbitant costs. They find it more enjoyable and physically less demanding.

Going away during the New Year is now commonplace, sometimes involving whole families or extended families. In extreme cases, some would even seek temporary refuge in a local hotel so as to avoid being visited by relatives and friends, or having to visit them. What's more, most of the cities celebrate it quietly without fireworks and firecrackers, which used to be part of the celebration.

Will the Lunar New Year survive modern living? I do not doubt that it would gradually lose its significance. In a few or more years the Chinese New Year will be taken as a common holiday and fewer people celebrate it.

Test 4

The Future Trends of Chinese Culture

In today's information age, no country and individual can resist the influence of globalization, and culture, as the mirror that reflects the history and development of a country, is also sure to be deeply affected by the trend of globalization. China is a country with long history, and its culture is especially involved in the trend of globalization. Along with the cross-cultural communication, Chinese culture is experiencing some changes.

Some people think that Chinese culture, as the essence of world's culture heritage, shouldn't be much influenced. But to my view, it should be, somewhat, changed. While existing in a rapidly developing age, nothing can stay unchanged. The future trend of Chinese culture is towards the international direction. Our culture should not only enrich our own life, but other countries' as well. It is the asset of the whole world. On the basis of keeping Chinese traditional culture style, it will also accept the exotic civilization, serving both Chinese people and people all around. The advanced elements of information age are to be absorbed as well. Modern Chinese culture involves various aspects of modern social life, and is the embodiment of the current society. The future Chinese culture will be an open culture, welcoming human excellent heritages across the world. It will become the communication envoy of China to the outside, presenting our past excellent civilization heritage and advanced development results to the rest of the world.

All in all, Chinese culture will embrace new elements in the modern society while keeping its traditional essence, as the envoy passing understanding and friendship among countries.

第四周 写作（下）——拔高篇

如果说上周所学的写作方法可是保证考生的写作成绩达到合格或者良好，那么本周所学内容就是将考生的写作继续拔高，考生在掌握了基本的写作思路后，需要提升词汇、句法方面的造诣，进而写出更出彩的文章。

本周学习内容将从遣词、造句、组段这三个层次来强化写作技巧。

星期一

写作的基本原则

一、长短句原则

在文章第一段（开头）用一长一短句，且先长后短；在文章主体部分，要先用一个短句解释主要意思，然后在阐述几个要点的时候采用先短后长的句群形式，定会让主体部分妙笔生辉。文章结尾一般用一长一短句就可以了。

As a creature, I eat; as a man, I read. Although one action is to meet the primary need of my body and the other is to satisfy the intellectual need of mind, they are in a way quite similar.

二、主题句原则

国有其君，家有其主，文章也要有其主。否则会给人造成“群龙无首”之感。一定要写一个主题句，放在文章的开头（保险型）或者结尾，让读者一目了然，必会平安无事！

Computers play an important role in our life. They can do most of the things people can do. They can give you information on buying and selling things. Provide you with suggestion of how to deal with certain illness and how to solve the problems you are faced with. There is no doubt that people can live much easier with the help of the computers.

三、一二三原则

领导讲话总是第一部分：第一点、第二点、第三点；第二部分：第一点……如此啰唆，可毕竟条理清晰。考官们看文章也必然要通过这些关键性的“标签”来判定你的文章是否结构清楚。破解方法很简单，只要把下面任何一组词汇加入到你的文章的几个要点前，文章就变得条理分明了。

1. to begin with, then, furthermore, finally
2. to start with, next, in addition, finally
3. first and foremost, besides, last but not least
4. on the one hand, on the other hand
5. for one thing, for another thing

四、短语优先原则

写作时,尤其是在考试时,如果使用短语,有两个好处:其一,用短语会使文章增加亮点。如果老师看到你的文章用词太简单,必然会对你的英语水平低看一等。相反,如果他/她发现你的文章中有精彩的短语,那么很有可能据此给你打个高分。其二,思维短路时,只有凑字数,怎么办?用短语!比如:

I cannot bear it. 可以用短语表达: I cannot put up with it.

I want it. 可以用短语表达: I am looking forward to it.

五、多实少虚原则

原因很简单,写文章还是应该写一些实际的东西,不要空话连篇。这就要求一定要多用实词,少用虚词。我这里所说的虚词就是指那些比较大的词。比如我们说“很好”的时候,不应该只说 nice 这样空洞的词,应该使用一些诸如 generous, humorous, interesting, smart, gentle, warm-hearted, hospital 等形象生动的词。再比如:走出房间,最普通的说法是: walk out of the room. 但是小偷走出房间应该说: sneak out of the room; 小姐走出房间应该说: sail out of the room; 小孩走出房间应该说: dance out of the room; 老人走出房间应该说: stagger out of the room. 所以多用实词,少用虚词,文章将会大放异彩!

六、多变句式原则

1 加法(串联)

考生都希望写下很长的句子,像个老外似的,可就是怕写错,怎么办?最保险的方法就是在任何两个句子之间加 and, 但最好是前后的句子有先后关系或者并列关系。比如说: I enjoy music and he is fond of playing guitar. 如果二者并列,我们可以用一个超级句式,如: Not only the fur coat is soft, but it is also warm. 其他的短语可以用: besides, furthermore, likewise, moreover 等。

2 转折(拐弯抹角)

批评某人缺点的时候,我们总习惯先拐弯抹角说说他的优点,然后转入正题,再说缺点。这种方式虽然阴险了点,可毕竟还比较容易让人接受。所以呢,我们说话的时候,只要在要点之前先来点废话,再使用转折关联词,来个180度大转弯。例如:

The car was quite old, yet it was in excellent condition.

The coat was thin, but it was warm.

其他短语: despite (that), still, however, nevertheless, in spite of, notwithstanding.

考博作文以论说文为主。论说文写作要求“四化”:语言准确化,词句多样化,结构清晰化,内容简单化。

1. 语言准确化

语言准确化主要表现在词汇准确和造句准确上。

词汇准确化主要体现在以下四个方面:1) 拼写;2) 介词;3) 同义词;4) 正规和非正规。

句子准确化主要是避免写病句。考生常见的错误有：1) 主谓不一致；2) 逗号滥用；3) 重复；4) 逻辑主语和主句主语不一致；5) 修饰语位置乱放；6) 不分可数名词与不可数名词；7) 冠词乱用；8) 句子不完整；9) 词语误搭配；10) 句子无主语；11) 一个句子有几个谓语动词；12) 中国式英语。

2. 词句多样化

词的多样化是指用词要多样。比如说图表作文，我们会用到 show，我们也可以说 reveal, indicate, illustrate 等。再比如“认为”，我们可以说 think，也可以说 hold, maintain, insist。表达“越来越”不要总说 more and more，还可以用 in growing numbers, on the rise 等。

句子的多样化主要为以下几个方面：句子开头多样化，主语多样化，定语多样化，长短句变化。比如，大部分考生都喜欢用“主谓宾”砖头式的句子，不知道变通一下，用不定式、形容词、介词短语、分词、同位语或从句开头。使用句子还要讲究平行原则，如何把短句连接或扩展成为长句。

3. 结构清晰化

结构清晰化就是要求考生最好把主题句写在段首。另外，句子与句子之间要注意过渡词的使用。分析原因或者列举段落我们提倡“条理原则”，即要经常说“首先，其次，然后，最后”。比如，首先：to begin/start with, first and foremost, most important of all；其次：then, furthermore, moreover, what's more, in addition, besides；最后：last but not least, finally。如果是讲两种人或两种情况，可以说 on the one hand, on the other hand 或 for one thing, for another。

4. 内容简单化

考博作文题型存在的主要目的，是为了考查考生的英语语言表达能力，而不是考查是否有构思能力、编剧能力。切记不用把内容想得多么复杂，复杂内容的英文表达会更难。退一步说，就算让考生当场写一篇字数在 160~200 个字左右的短篇汉语文章，他们也不一定能写出什么惊天动地、见解独到的微型杂文来。所以考生只要举一些简单常见的例子就行了。

每日训练

Directions: Read the following paragraph and then write a response paper of about 250 to 300 words.

Quite a few teachers complain about students reading fewer books than before. In fact, students nowadays spend more time suffering on the Internet and watching movies on DVD's. Naturally they spend less time reading books. Do you think that students today are less knowledgeable because they read fewer books?

参考范文1

There is a frequent complaint among teachers today that students read fewer books than before and that they are less knowledgeable as a result. At first sight, this argument seems reasonable. However, a careful inspection at it reveals how flimsy it is. In my view, students today are generally more knowledgeable than the elder generations.

Truly, students now spend less time reading paper books, but they spend more time

surfing the Internet and watching movies on DVDs. It is, as I see it, just a change in the means of acquiring knowledge.

Actually, there is a far larger amount of information on the Internet than contained by traditional books. On line you can not only be provided with the most detailed and latest reports on what is happening around the world, but can also learn about the history of an event by linking to related web pages. Besides, the so-called e-books are not a bit inferior to paper books either in amount or in content. A lot of classical works can now be read on line. Last but not least, thanks to the net, students today can communicate with people in almost any corner of the world, which can considerably expand their horizons and enrich their knowledge.

DVDs are another important means for young people today to master knowledge. Compared with paper books, this new kind of device is far more vivid and alive. Besides, almost all information in traditional books can be conveyed in the form of DVD: classical novels can be made into movies and played, poems can be read aloud and accompanied by pictures, and even courses in school can be made into videos.

To sum up, reading fewer books by no means render modern students less knowledgeable. Instead, they are exposed to a lot more knowledge than previous generations.

参考范文2

Quite a few teachers complain about students reading fewer books than before. In fact, students nowadays spend more time surfing on the Internet and watching movies on DVDs. Naturally they spend less time reading books. But, I think students nowadays are more knowledgeable than before, because knowledge is easier to access in the net than in the print books.

First, electric books in the net are less expensive than print books. Buying print books is a heavy burden to students, so as to libraries. Books in libraries are too limited, and not updated in time because of scarce of fund. Almost every student and teacher have encountered this problem that they could not borrow the book they want from the school library. To contrast with this, many websites provide free e-books and information, and many school libraries have purchased down-load article service from some rental web libraries. Thus, students could get more information with less money from e-books and e-libraries than from print books and print journals.

Second, getting knowledge from the web costs less time than from print books. In the past, for searching information about his subject, a student must look up many bunches catalog of school library at first, then look for many heavy print books from dusty bookshelves, and copy the pages from the books. After several weeks, searching, he generally could not get enough information about the subject. Now, by moving mouse and clicking keyboard, several minutes later a lot of information would take on the screen. Searching information is not a time-consuming work in the net.

Third, students could have easier access to e-books than print books. It is impossible for a person to know detailed researching situation of some subjects at home and abroad

from print books and journals, because no library could collect all books and journals published in the world. But now, a student is able to read all articles he interested in, all over the world from CNKI, NCBI and other websites.

It is universally recognized that the quality and quantity of articles that students write increase sharply year by year, and novels written by younger writers are in bloom now. So we can draw a conclusion that nowadays students are more knowledgeable than before, and surfing on the net enables students to get more knowledge than print books do.

星期二

写作高分技巧之“遣词”

一、词汇运用的层次

在英语写作中，词汇的运用层次与评分标准是密不可分的。当然，层次越高，证明考生对于知识的掌握越是熟练、自然，得分也就越高。词汇的运用层次可分为四个等级：

1. 正确 (Correct)：表达你想表达的意思，对于同一个意思可能有好几个词，那么同义词基本上都是正确的。

2. 合适 (Appropriate)：在不同语境下要使用不同的词，比如在肯定的语义中要用褒义词，而在否定的语义中要使用贬义词。

3. 精确 (Exact)：要联系上下文，尽可能用词到位，因为有些词是不够精确的。比如：allocate part of the fiscal revenue, allocate 是分配，不能用 divide 来替换。

4. 灵活 (Smart)：英语本身就有很多约定俗成的表达方法，用我们的话来说，就是有很多“潜规则”。因此，我们要注意培养地道英语表达，还要注意词汇的固定搭配。

二、词汇的运用原则

1 用词要简洁

能一个词表达清楚的意思，就不要加上多余的成分。另外，还要注意不要造成意义上的重复累赘。

如：原句：What you have done is illegal under the law.

优化：What you have done is illegal.

2 用词要多样

注意不要一味地重复使用某个词汇，可适当转换成同义词或短语。也不要一味地使用同一种词性，要学会使用不同的词性。

如：原句：This can definitely make them work more enthusiastically.

优化：This can definitely stimulate their working enthusiasm.

3 多用朴素、易懂的词

对考生来说，生僻或华丽的词汇驾驭起来比较难，很容易使用不当，很多时候不但不

能给文章增色，反而可能会使阅卷老师感到困惑，起到负面作用。因此，我们建议考生在写作时尽量选用自己熟悉的词语。

如：原句：Parents in China always have altercations about their children's education.

优化：Parents in China always have quarrels about their children's education.

4 多用具体的词

如果词的概括性太强，往往让人觉得抽象、笼统，会给人造成模糊不清的感觉，词义比较具体的词会使表达更加准确、生动。

如：原句：Some people like to read the newspaper very quickly and try to find some interesting stories.

优化：Some people like to flip through the newspaper and try to find some interesting stories.

5 注意使用限定词

在写作时适当使用限定词来进行修饰，可以使论述更加客观、适度，避免观点的绝对化。

如：In general, young people seem more prone to job-hopping.

Nowadays the increasingly severe employment situation is perhaps the biggest challenge facing college students.

三、制造亮点词

如何让你的英语作文更有亮点？从历年书面表达高分文章来看，每篇文章都有“亮点”，即在用词、造句或段落安排上都有独到之处。要想获得高分就应在“正确”表达的基础上写出自己的特色，写出自己的“亮”点。

1 使用同义词进行替换

使用同义词的好处在于首先可以向阅卷者展示考生词汇量的丰富，其次也可以使文章富有变化。因此，同义词的运用是衡量考生英语水平的一个很有力的标准，阅卷者认同你的同时，自然也会给你高分。请看下面的例子：

School teachers used to be the source of information. However, some people argue that teachers are not as important as before because there is an increasing variety of information resource. What is your opinion?

要对上面的句子进行重新描述，最简单的就是用同义词替换，请看下表：

原文	同义词替换
argue	reason
important	crucial, significant
increasing	growing
variety	diversity, medley
because	as

2 使用各种形式的同根词进行替换

英语里面有很多同根词，通过单词的变换来吸引阅卷者眼球并获得高分是一个很好的办法。一些单词通过添加前缀或者后缀的方式可以衍生出很多新的词汇。而使用这些词汇可以避免重复原文当中的词，也可以向阅卷者展示你变化词汇的技巧。

比如，写作中我们经常会用到“知道”这个概念，我们可以用 know 这个词以及它的其他形式和它们的同义词来表示“知道”这个意思。如下所示：

know 的同义词	appreciate
	apprehend
	cognize
	comprehend
	fathom
	grasp
	understand
know 的同词根词 knowledge 的同义词	information
	lore
	science
	wisdom

3 使用短语进行替换

英语里同样拥有丰富的短语，使用它们，可以准确传达原文中的信息。在一些特殊情况下，短语也可以作为增加字数的方法。我们来看一个例子：

Some say that building more roads will help reduce the traffic congestion in big cities. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of this. Do you support or oppose this statement?

在这一段话里，可以替换的短语如下所示：

原文	同义词替换
build	set up
support	back up
oppose	object to/be against
advantage	merits/upsides

4 综合使用各种方法进行替换

经过了上述几种方法的讨论，我们可以进行综合的运用，切勿只拘泥于一种方法。比如，我们要表达“利益、好处”这个意思时，我们一般可以使用 benefit 这个词，我们也可以使用其他不同的形式来表达这个意思，比如：

benefit	形容词: beneficial
	副词: beneficially
	介词短语: with benefit
	动词: benefit
	同义词: advantage/profit

用同义词对于原句进行替换后,再把原句的结构进行适当的变换,最终呈现在阅卷者面前的句子和原来就截然不同,但是意思基本一致的。又比如:因特网对我们的日常生活带来很大的影响。这句话我们可以写出不同的搭配。比如:

Internet	haves	profound	effects influences impacts	on our daily life.
	exerts	remarkable		
	brings	considerable		
	produces	deep		
	exercises	significant		

在上面这个表格里,对于这句话我们可以给出 $5 \times 5 \times 3 = 75$ 种不同表达。可见同义词替换的威力有多么巨大。当然,在此提醒各位考生,要使自己的文章更吸引人,光变换单词是不够的,我们还要把单词和句子的结构变换相结合,从而使自己的文章更丰富多彩。

每日训练

Directions: For this part, you are allowed thirty minutes to write a composition on the topic: Reduce Waste on Campus. You should write at least 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese.

1. 目前有些校园内浪费现象严重。
2. 浪费的危害。
3. 从我做起,杜绝浪费。

参考范文1

Reduce Waste on Campus

Nowadays, with the improvement of our living standards, the phenomenon of waste is becoming more and more serious on campus. A lot of food is left after each meal; brand-new clothes are thrown away; electric appliances are not turned off when there are no people in the dormitories.

The habit of waste can cause a lot of problems. Though China is developing very fast, there are still a large number of people living under poverty. Furthermore, China has such a large population to support with such limited store of energy; waste may cause a disaster for the whole country. It can also have effect on the psychology of university students. They are not used to taking efforts to earn their living, and they will keep this bad habit during their whole life. How can our nation develop if every one of us keeps

wasting?

To form a good habit of economy is very important for everyone, especially for university students. We should try our best to protect the energy and resources of our country and our world. Please don't leave food in your plate after finishing your meals; please don't throw your clothes away when they are brand-new; please turn off electric lamps whenever you leave the dormitory. By doing such routines in our daily lives, we can not only save resources but also give some help to the people who are not so well-off as us.

参考范文2

Reduce Waste on Campus

At present, among so many colleges, waste is a frequently found phenomenon. Taking a walk on campus, one may be shocked by the sight of various kinds of waste — intact main foodstuff dumped everywhere, intact clothes thrown in the dustbin, unnecessary things bought at will and so on. When going out with so-called friends, extravagant college students would prefer taxi to the bothersome crowded bus, buy themselves elegant dresses, and especially for girls, have meals in a higher-grade restaurant and indulge themselves in expensive bars. All these are a typical wasteful student's life on campus.

It is the waste habit that will bring about many negative effects. First, it is a waste of money and a waste of other people's laborious fruits. Uncountable taxpayers' work makes the adolescents have the opportunity to receive higher education in universities. There's no reason for them to waste time and money in self-enjoyment. Considering from the social perspective, it is a loss to the agricultural and industrial productions when their work is mistreated and wasted. Apart from that, students who get used to wasting don't know how to respect other people and their work and become arrogant gradually in every aspect of their daily lives on campus. If the case is to be so, it is a failure of modern education.

There are so many bad effects if students develop a habit of waste; we should do something to put an end to this behavior. Consume when it is necessary, and never dump food in good condition or things still useful and so on. By conforming to these principles, we can learn to pay respect to others and their diligent work and become more responsible people with a right sense of morality.

星期三

写作亮点词汇

一、亮点词汇

1. **a/the combination of** 合成，组合

例：It is **the combination of** wit and political analysis that makes his articles so readable. 他的妙笔生花和政治分析相得益彰，使他的文章脍炙人口。

2. **a lifelong career/friendship/wish** 一生的事业/友情/愿望

例：For this type of person, the job is **a lifelong career**. 对于这些人来说，工作就是一生的事业。

3. **accordingly** 于是，因此

例：There aren't many jobs available. **Accordingly**, companies receive hundreds of resumes for every opening. 目前的工作空缺不是很多，因此，公司的每个职位招聘都会收到成百上千份简历。

4. **account for** 占据

例：In addition, the population in the countryside **accounts for** 80% of the population and the stability of the nation depends on them. 另外，农村人口占据了总人口的80%，而且国家的稳定也取决于这些人。

5. **additionally** 另外，此外

例：**Additionally**, physical exercise is an effective way to release pressure. 此外，体育锻炼是缓解压力的一种有效的方式。

6. **address a problem/question/issue etc.** 着手解决，致力于

例：It is high time we **addressed** the problem of campus waste. 现在该是我们着手解决校园浪费问题的时候了。

7. **alleviate the problem/situation/suffering etc.** 减缓……

例：We can almost always do something to **alleviate** the situation. 我们几乎总是可以做一些事情来缓解目前的形势。

8. **along with** 除……以外

例：Tobacco is taxed in most countries, **along with** alcohol. 除酒之外，烟草在多数

国家也都要征税。

9. an-amazing sight 令人惊讶的景象

例: It is an **amazing sight** to see many bicyclists on Chang'an Avenue in the morning head to work. 每天早上, 在长安街上可以看到很多人骑着自行车去上班, 这是一幅令人惊讶的景象。

10. apply to 适用

例: This saying **applies to** everyday life. 这个谚语适用于日常生活。

11. appropriate 适当的, 合适的

例: This new education system is more **appropriate** to the needs of the students. 这种新的教育体系更适合学生的需求。

12. as is the case with 同样的情况

例: Parents are a source for college funding, **as is the case with** most students. 父母是学生学费的主要来源, 大多数学生都是这种情况。

13. as we know it 像我们知道的那样

例: If there was not electricity, our world would not be able to operate **as we know it**. 如果没有电, 世界就不会是我们现在的样子。

14. at any cost 无论如何, 不惜任何代价

例: Because of this belief, they will try to obtain lucky numbers for things such as a car license plate **at any cost**. 因为相信幸运数字能带来好运, 这些人在买车时会不惜一切代价买到有幸运数字的车牌。

15. at sb's disposal 任某人处理, 供某人使用

例: The library has a large number of reference books **at the students' disposal**. 图书馆有大量的参考书可供同学们使用。

16. attribute sth. to sth. /sb. 把……归因于或归功于

例: The fall in the number of deaths from heart disease **is generally attributed to** improvements in diet. 心脏病死亡人数的下降普遍被归因于饮食方面的改善。

17. avenue 渠道, 办法

例: We explored every possible **avenue**, but still couldn't come up with a solution. 我们寻找每一种可行的渠道, 但仍然不能找到解决的办法。

18. average person 普通人, 一般人

例: Einstein's theory is really too difficult for the **average person** to understand. 爱因斯坦的理论对于普通人来说是很难理解的。

19. be informed of sth. 知道

例: People **are also informed of** products and services by advertisements on TV. 人们通过电视广告了解到了各种产品和服务。

20. be tied to 被束缚着, 被牵制着

例: Nowadays many people, especially young people do not like to **be tied to a** steady job. 现在许多人, 尤其是年轻人, 都不喜欢永远做一件固定的工作。

21. belongings 所属物，随身物品

例：Please also take care of your **belongings** during your travel here as there has been much theft reported. 旅行中要保管好随身物品，据报道这里已经发生好几起盗窃事件了。

22. beyond 超出，越过

例：These expensive luxuries are far **beyond** the reach of ordinary people. 这些昂贵的奢侈品远远超出了普通人的负担能力。

23. broaden one's horizons 拓宽视野，开阔眼界

例：I'd like to work abroad to **broaden my horizons**. 我喜欢在国外工作来开拓我的眼界。

24. by/in contrast to/with 对比之下

例：**In contrast with** their system, ours seems very old-fashioned. 和他们的制度相比，我们的制度显得过于守旧。

25. call for 要求

例：Water shortage affects people's lives and has led to production shortages, all of which **call for** immediate action. 缺水影响了人们的生活和生产，因此我们需要立即采取行动来解决这个问题。

26. cater to 满足，迎合

例：There are magazines **catering to** different tastes and interests such as economics, sports, etc. 有各种杂志可以满足人们在经济、体育等不同方面的品位和兴趣。

27. common practice 司空见惯的事，惯例

例：It is **common practice** in the US to tip the waiter. 在美国给服务生小费是很普遍的现象。

28. compatible 和谐的，一致的

例：In my opinion, extensive and selective readings are **compatible** and can become a combination. 我认为广泛性阅读和选择性阅读是一致的，而且可以相互结合。

29. comply with 服从，顺从

例：All the drivers must **comply with** these safety rules. 所有司机都必须遵守这些安全规则。

30. conserve 节约，节省（电、水和能源等）

例：Everyone needs to make efforts to **conserve** water. 每个人都应该尽力节约用水。

31. continuing education 继续教育

例：One of the problems with **continuing education** lies not in learning, but in unlearning. 继续教育的问题之一不在于学，而在于忘却。

32. cut down 削减，减少

例：We must **cut down** our expenses. 我们必须削减开支。

33. despite/in spite of 尽管

例：**Despite** its possible risks, but on the whole, the advantages of trying new things

outweigh its disadvantages. 尽管可能存在风险,但从整体上来说,尝试新鲜事物的利大于弊。

34. encompass 包含, 包括

例: The study **encompasses** the social, political, and economic aspects of the situation. 这项研究包括了社会、政治和经济几个方面的内容。

35. enable ... to 使……能够

例: Blog **enables** millions of people to have a voice and connect with others. 博客使数百万人能够抒发自己的情感并可以和其他人联系起来。

36. enrich 使丰富

例: Hobbies can **enrich** our lives greatly as long as we are able to manage our time. 只要合理安排时间, 业余爱好会大大丰富我们的生活。

37. exposure to 暴露, 受到, 经历

例: Prolonged **exposure to** the sun can cause skin cancer. 长期地暴露在阳光下会引起皮肤癌。

38. fashion/fashionable 时尚/时尚的

例: As a result, sports are becoming popular and even **fashionable**. 因此, 运动现在越来越流行, 甚至成为一种时尚。

39. fast paced 快节奏的

例: People today live a **fast paced** life and are always in a hurry. 现代人生活节奏快, 经常是忙忙碌碌的。

40. finance 供给……经费, 负担经费

例: Nowadays many students take part-time jobs to **finance** their education. 现在许多学生做兼职工作来负担自己的学费。

41. focus on 集中精力, 把重心放在……

例: Every student should **focus on** good study habits. 每个学生都应该集中精力培养好的学习习惯。

42. fund 提供资金

例: Previously in China, a university education was **funded** by the government. 以前, 中国大学生的学费是由国家资助的。

43. have/gain access to/be accessible to 可以到达, 可以使用

例: It is seen as an effective means of business communication where relevant staff **have access to** a computer network. 这被看做是一种有效的商务沟通方式, 通过它相关的员工都可以使用一个计算机网络。

44. have a hard time doing 感到为难

例: Many people still **have a hard time** saying “no”. 很多人在说“不”的时候感到很为难。

45. hence 因此

例: The cost of transport is a major expense for an industry. **Hence** factory location is an important consideration. 交通成本对于一个产业来说是一项重大的支出, 因此工厂选址

十分重要。

46. highlight 突出, 强调; 重点

例: The report **highlighted** the problem of the old man. 该报告强调了老年人问题。

47. hold back 阻止, 阻碍

例: Pollution has **held back** seriously the further development of mankind. 污染已经严重地阻碍了人类的进一步发展。

48. impress 使有印象, 影响

例: Such research practices based on scientific principles **impressed** me. 这种在科学理论指导下的研究实践给我留下了很深的印象。

49. indeed 的确, 其实

例: Dieting has its disadvantages. **Indeed**, it has great negative effects on one's health. 节食有它的弊端, 事实上, 它对一个人的健康有很大的负面影响。

50. in all walks of life 各个行业, 生活的各个方面

例: This is indeed an important question **in all walks of life** and in any country. 这的确是一个各行各业以及任何一个国家都存在的重要问题。

51. in general/generally 一般来说

例: Young people **in general** seem more prone to job hop. 年轻人一般更容易跳槽。

52. in faith 的确

例: He doesn't know the answer **in faith**. 他确实不知道答案。

53. in favor of 支持, 赞同

例: Most people are **in favor of** this practice. 大多数人赞同这种做法。

54. in honor of 纪念, 庆祝

例: **In honor of** the upcoming Teacher's Day, we plan a party for our teachers. 为庆祝即将到来的教师节, 我们为老师们准备了一场晚会。

55. in the light of 依据, 按照

例: Many old people tend to review a new thing **in the light of** past experience. 许多老人往往会依据过去的经验来评判一件新的事物。

56. in the long run 从长远来看

例: **In the long run**, this plan is not in accordance with our final goal. 从长远来看, 这一计划与我们的最终目标不符。

57. in vain 徒劳, 白费工夫

例: All our hard work turned out to be **in vain**. 我们所有的努力结果都是徒劳。

58. involve in 卷入……中

例: No one would like to **involve in** this matter. 没有人愿意牵扯到这件事中。

59. link 把……与……联系起来

例: However, there has been no medical research directly **linking** smoking to the disease. 然而, 没有医学研究证明吸烟会直接导致肺癌。

60. live through 度过, 经受住

例: Those that **lived through** the earthquake will cherish today's happy life more. 经历过地震的那些人们将更加珍惜今天的幸福生活。

61. make up for 弥补

例: Elective courses can greatly **make up for** the inadequacy of compulsory courses. 选修课能够极大地弥补必修课的不足。

62. meanwhile 同时

例: The incomes of male professionals went up by almost 80%. **Meanwhile**, part-time women workers saw their earnings fall. 男性专业人员的收入上涨了将近 80%, 与此同时, 兼职女性职工的收入却下降了。

63. mistrust 不信任

例: The effect is a general **mistrust** among consumers toward sellers and the free market in general. 这样做一般会导致消费者不信任销售者和自由市场。

64. more often than not 时常, 往往

例: In fact, **more often than not**, customers were more interested in the software than the hardware. 事实上, 消费者往往对软件比对硬件更感兴趣。

65. mutual 相互的

例: Differences foster **mutual** complementation and mutual support. 不同会促进相互之间的理解和支持。

66. (There is) no doubt 毫无疑问

例: There is **no doubt** that TV has greatly influenced our lives and the way we live. 毫无疑问, 电视已经极大地影响了我们的生活和生活方式。

67. occasion 情况, 场合, 时机

例: As a general rule, people like to help each other, but there are **occasions** when you shouldn't hesitate to say "no". 一般来讲, 人与人是应该互相帮助的。但在有些情况下, 你还是应该毫不犹豫地说“不”。

68. on behalf of 代表, 为了

例: **On behalf of** my colleagues and myself I thank you. 我代表我的同事和我本人向你表示感谢。

69. on no account 决不

例: **On no account** should we follow blindly. 我们决不当盲从。

70. on second thoughts 进一步考虑后

例: You should make decisions **on second thoughts**. 你应该进一步考虑后再做决定。

71. on the whole 总体来说

例: **On the whole**, young man agrees study most, least conservative thought. 总的来说, 年轻人最肯学习, 最少保守思想。

72. on the contrary 相反

例: I've never opposite it; **on the contrary**, I've always supported it. 我从未反对它,

相反，我一贯支持它。

73. on account of 由于

例：We delayed our departure **on account of** the bad weather. 由于糟糕的天气，我们耽搁了出发。

74. out of reach 够不着的，负担不起的

例：Those who are not fond of traveling consider it costly and **out of reach** for the average person. 这些人不喜欢旅游是因为他们认为旅游费用高，一般人负担不起。

75. outweigh 超过，胜过，优于

例：The advantages far **outweigh** the disadvantages in this case. 在这件事上，利远大于弊。

76. overwhelm/overwhelming 淹没，压倒/势不可挡的，压倒性的

例：There is **overwhelming** evidence that smoking damages your health. 有大量的证据显示，吸烟有害健康。

77. particulars 细节

例：For further **particulars**, contact the office. 详情请联系办事处。

78. pastime 消遣，娱乐

例：Reading novels is a favorite **pastime** because of the vivid descriptions and plots. 读小说是打发时光的好办法，因为小说里有生动的描写和故事情节。

79. perform/performance 表现

例：Good study habits are essential if one wants to **perform** well. 要想学习好，就要养成良好的学习习惯。

80. prevalence 流行

例：The **prevalence** of fake commodities is a problem in our society. 假货充斥市场已经成为社会的一个问题。

81. prevail 流行，盛行

例：Good will **prevail** over evil. 善良将战胜邪恶。

82. pros and cons 正反两方面

例：Weighing up the **pros and cons**, I am inclined to the latter opinion. 权衡利弊，我倾向于后一种观点。

83. prospects 前途，前景

例：Nowadays job **prospects** for college students don't look good. 现在大学毕业生的就业前景不好。

84. provided 假设

例：Some believe it is a waste of time to sit for the CET-6 because they have already passed the CET-4, which entitles them to graduate with a degree **provided** other requirements are met. 有些学生认为考大学英语六级是浪费时间，因为如果其他考试都合格，只要通过了大学英语四级学校就会允许学生毕业并授予学位。

85. raise the money (raise money) 筹款

例：There are several possible ways to **raise the money** to pay for fees and tuition.

有很多多种方式可以筹款交学费。

86. rather than 而不是, 不愿

例: It is one's ability **rather than** the luck that plays a crucial role in his success. 是一个人的能力, 而不是运气在他的成功中起决定性作用。

87. regardless of 不管, 不顾

例: Some students buy whatever they like **regardless of** the price. 一些同学想买什么就买什么, 根本不考虑价格。

88. remain 保持, 仍旧是

例: However, living standards and health conditions of people in developing countries **remain** unsatisfactory. 然而, 发展中国家人民的生活水平和健康状况仍然不能让人满意。

89. stand out 突出, 显眼

例: Her work **stands out** from the rest as easily the best. 她的工作成绩远比其他人都好。

90. set forth 宣布, 提出

例: He **set forth** their aim in a speech. 他在一次演说中提出了他们的目标。

91. set out to 准备做

例: Many graduating students **set out to** change the society around them, but ended up being changed by it. 许多即将毕业的学生准备改变社会, 但最终却被社会改变了。

92. strain 加大难度, 增加困难

例: Industrial development requires a large amount of water, which further **strains** this precious resource. 工业生产需要大量的水, 这就进一步加重了缺水现象。

93. the reason behind 真正的原因, 背后的原因, 潜在的原因

例: This is **the reason behind** the recent rise in prices. 这就是最近物价上涨的背后原因。

94. the reverse 反过来

例: **The reverse** is actually the case. 事实刚好相反。

95. to illustrate 比如

例: Here's another example **to illustrate** my point. 这里有另一个例子来说明我的观点。

96. to summarize (in summary) 总之

例: **To summarize**, personal preference determines if one lives in city or countryside. 总之, 个人喜好决定了他们是住在城市还是乡村。

97. undermine 破坏, 危害

例: Constant criticism will **undermine** one's confidence. 经常批评会摧毁一个人的自信。

98. vary from 不同

例: Hobbies **vary from** person to person based on educational background, income

levels, and interests. 由于教育背景、收入水平和兴趣的不同, 人们的兴趣也各异。

99. well-rounded 全面的, 多才多艺的

例: We encourage the kids to be **well-rounded**. 我们鼓励孩子全面发展。

100. widen/enrich one's knowledge 扩大知识面

例: Travel allows them to learn about different cultures and **widen their knowledge**.
旅游可以让人了解不同的文化, 扩大知识面。

每日训练

1. Directions: In this section you are required to write an essay in accordance with following requirements:

- A. Title: Should All College Courses Be Specifically Related to a Future Occupation?
- B. Time limit: 40 minutes
- C. Word limit: 180 – 200 words
- D. Your composition must be written on the **ANSWER SHEET**.

2. Directions: In this section you are required to write an essay on the topic of **Human Education** for at least 250 words on the answer sheet.

参考范文

1

Should All College Course Be Specifically Related to a Future Occupation?

Recently there has been a heated discussion in a newspaper as to whether all college courses should be specifically related to a future occupation. As this is a controversial issue, opinions vary from person to person. Some college students are of the opinion that all the college courses should be closely associated with their future occupation because the professional knowledge they have acquired will directly be used in the work after their graduation.

On the contrary, some other college students take quite a different attitude to this question. In their views, not all college courses should be specifically related to their future occupation. Some professional courses should be so because they would not be a layman if they had the chance of using their specialties after their graduation. It is unnecessary for optional courses to be related to their future career. Maybe such courses won't apply to their future jobs.

In my opinion, even if none of your college courses are related to your future profession, it doesn't matter. What really counts is to master some basic knowledge and gain some skills proficiently when they are at college. A college graduate from Peking University may have no chance to use his professional knowledge, but he can still make a living by selling pork in the street. In fact, this example indicates that it is difficult for all college courses to be specifically related to a future occupation.

The other day, a professor from Peking University gave a lecture “Chinese Intellectuals and Written Cultural Text”. In his lecture, he held that Chinese intellectuals have lost the written cultural text since the May 4th Movement. His opinion set us thinking that the loss of traditional humane education resulted in a crisis of cultural education.

With the rapid development of economy, the living standard of the Chinese people has improved a lot in terms of material wealth. In a period when economy takes priority, people pay more and more attention to profits. At present, moneymaking and pleasure seeking are becoming a popular fashion. On the other hand, there appears a barren field of spirit in today's society. It has become unexpectedly hard to rebuild the paradise of traditional culture. Ideological confusion, moral decline and a chaotic cultural market, all these show that it is the high time to have something done in order to tackle the problem of cultural orientation. Our times call for an ideal humane education.

It is unwise to discard traditional Chinese culture as a whole. Some of the elements of this culture can be made use of in the reconstruction of our spiritual civilization directly or with some adaptation. Our attitude towards tradition should be “discarding the dross and selecting the essence”. The humane education of the past can serve as a supplement to our Marxist education. It should start from primary school. In this way, our children will get educated so as to be possessed of a perfect personality. The national morale will be deeply rooted in people's mind, and will help push forward the growth of economy.

To sum up, we can find it badly necessary to build up an ideal humane education. We should find an efficient way to develop our humane education and dig out more resources from traditional Chinese culture.

一、“造句”原则

1 句子应紧凑连贯

句子中各成分之间要衔接紧密、连贯并富有条理。我们可以通过关联词语引导从句或并列句来体现句子的内部关系，也可适当使用分词结构和一些独立的短语或是插入语成分来代替从句。此外，句子之间还要注意指代、时态、语态、人称和数等方面的连贯和一致。

如：原句：Teenagers are pressured by school work and they are also encouraged by their peers, and under these, they resort to smoking, and sometimes they fell a little guilty.

优化：Pressured by school work and encouraged by their peers, teenagers often resort to smoking, though they feel a little guilty sometimes. (优化后的句子结构紧凑、意思连贯。)

原句：The following ways can be adopted to improve our study efficiency. First, you should make a detailed study plan.

优化：The following ways can be adopted to improve our study efficiency. First, we should make a detailed study plan. (改成 we 后，与前面的 our 在人称上保持一致。)

2 句式应有变化

一篇文章要使人觉得内容丰富、语言生动，就应该重视句式的变化，如主动句和被动句搭配使用、适当穿插倒装句和强调句等特殊句式。另外，不要一味地使用常见的“主语 + 谓语”的开头方式，可以适当搭配以分词、副词等开头的句式。

如：原句：They say that people obtain most of their knowledge through reading extensively.

优化：They say that it is through reading extensively that people obtain most of their knowledge. (优化成强调句型。)

原句：The competition is becoming increasingly fierce, so it is more difficult to find a job than before.

优化: **With the competition becoming increasingly fierce**, it is more difficult to find a job than before. (介词短语开头。)

3 句子表达要简洁

造句时, 要注意避免赘言重复。只要意思表达清楚, 多余的词语就没有必要了。有的考生有时纯粹为了凑字数, 加上了一些不必要的成分, 而导致语义含混不清、啰唆冗长。

如: 原句: I think *Gone with the Wind* is one of those good films which I enjoyed watching very much.

优化: *Gone with the Wind* is a film I enjoyed very much. / I enjoyed the film *Gone with the Wind* very much. (将多余的成分去掉后, 句子表达更加简洁。)

4 长短句要结合

在写作中, 一味地采用长句或短句都是不可取的, 要将简单句和带有衔接词的复杂句交替使用, 这样才能够使文章句式丰富、富有节奏感。

长句含有许多修饰语, 适合表达准确而复杂的思想, 解释观点或理论, 描写细致的事物。写作时, 考生要注意前后句子之间是否存在联系, 善于发现各简单句之间的关联, 用恰当的连接词将简单句连接起来, 组成准确地道的复杂长句, 增加文章的气势。

如: 原句: Lies do harm to those who are being told. Lies also do harm to those who tell them.

优化: Lies **not only** do harm to those who are being told, **but also** do harm to those who tell them.

原句: Natural resources are very limited. They will be exhausted in the near future. It is not true. But it becomes a major concern around the world. This is a widely accepted fact.

优化: **It is widely accepted fact that** there is a major concern around the world **for the exhaustion** of limited natural resources in the near future, **though** it is unlikely to be true.

长句固然能表达出复杂而缜密的思想, 但如果片面追求复杂句式, 华而不实, 反而成为表达的累赘。因此, 写作中句子的长短应根据表达的需要, 有话则长, 无话则短。

短句比较简洁、明快、有力, 适合陈述重要的事实或想法。短句不仅指句子长度较短, 也指句子内部结构精炼。

如: 原句: Many automobile parts that are made of plastics and other synthetic materials do not last long.

优化: Many automobile parts **made of** plastics and other synthetic materials do not last long.

原句: He didn't have enough experience, which is the reason why he didn't do the work well.

优化: He didn't do the work well **for lack of experience**.

5 少用问句, 尽量不用感叹句和祈使句

有些考生喜欢开篇问一连串的问题, 想以此引起阅卷老师的注意。一般来讲, 一篇作

文中可以偶尔出现一两个问句，太多则会适得其反。

感叹句和祈使句，多用于口语之中，不太适宜在正式的书面写作中出现。尽管在抒发感情和发出呼吁时也可以使用，但多数考生对这两种句式的把握能力不够，因此我们建议考生尽量不要使用。

二、制造闪光句

(一) 倒装句和强调句

1. 什么是倒装句

句子成分在句子中都有一定的位置，但有时为了修饰原因，可以把某些句子成分前后倒置，以达到突出强调的作用。英语中倒装主要有两种：全部倒装和部分倒装。

全部倒装是指主语和谓语完全倒置，常用于记叙或描写。

部分倒装是指只将助动词提到主语前面，而主要动词仍然保留在原来的位置上，常用于议论或说明。

如：原句：By reading widely, one can really make remarkable achievements in his study.

优化：Only by reading widely can he really make remarkable achievements in his study.

2. 什么是强调句

写作中，常使用强调句来达到突出重点的目的。强调句的基本结构是：It is (was) + 被强调的部分 + that (who) + 句子其他成分。

如：原句：Not how much you read but what you read really matters.

优化：It is not how much you read but what you read that really matters.

(二) 含有插入语的句子

插入语是一种独立成分，通常与句中的其他成分没有语法上的关系，将它删掉之后，句子结构仍然完整。插入语大都是对一句话进行附加说明或解释，通常由一个词、一个短语或一个句子构成，常置于句首、句中或句末，一般用逗号或破折号与句子隔开。插入语有时表达说话者的态度和看法，有时起强调的作用，有时是为了引起对方的注意，有时起转移话题或说明事由的作用，有时还可以承上启下，使句子衔接得更紧密。

写作中常用到的插入语包括：

副词和副词短语：indeed (的确)，surely (无疑)，however (然而)，frankly (坦率地说)，obviously (显然)，naturally (天然地)，luckily/happily for sb. (算某人幸运)，fortunately (幸好)，strangely (奇怪)，briefly (简单地说)，personally (依个人之见)。

形容词和形容词短语：true (真的)，funny (真可笑)，needless to say (不用说)，most important of all (最为重要)，worse still (更糟糕的)，even better (更好)。

介词短语：in conclusion (总之)，in a word (简而言之)，in short/in brief (简而言之)，in general (一般说来)，in a sense (在某种意义上)，in one's view (在某人看来)，in one's opinion (按照某人的看法)，in fact (事实上)，at first (首先)，in addition (此外)，of course (当然)，to one's surprise (使某人惊奇的是)，to one's regret (使某人遗憾的是)，for example (例如)，on the contrary (相反)，in other words (换句话说)，on the other hand (然

而)。

分词短语: strictly speaking (严格地说), generally considering (一般认为), considering/taking ... into consideration (考虑到, 鉴于), judging from (根据……判断)。

不定式短语: to be sure (无疑地), to sum up (概括地说), to tell the truth (说实话), to be frank/to be honest (说实在的, 老实地说), to make matters worse (更糟的是), to start with/to begin with (首先, 第一)。

简短的句子: I am sure (我可以肯定地说), I believe/think (我相信), do you know (你知道吗), you see (你明白), I'm afraid (恐怕), it is said (据说), I suppose (我想), what's more (而且), what's worse (更糟糕的是), that is to say (也就是说), what is important (重要的是)。

如: 原句: I think that computer games can also do some good to young people.

优化: Computer games, **in my opinion**, can also do some good to young people.

原句: The above-mentioned show that it is no doubt that college students should often attend sports activities.

优化: **Considering the above-mentioned**, it is no doubt that college students should often attend sports activities.

(三) 含有平行结构的句子

平行结构指的是将结构相同或相似、意义并重、语气一致的语言成分并行排列的一种修辞手法。这种结构层次清晰、语意顺畅, 能够起到加强语气、增强表达效果的作用。

如: 原句: This phenomenon, in my opinion, has upgraded the quality of people's life. And it has also improved the value of consumption of our modern society.

优化: This phenomenon, in my opinion, has **not only** upgraded the quality of people's life **but also** it has also improved the value of consumption of our modern society.

原句: Many people get up early to jog along country lanes, or in order to observe the wonder of nature. And some also just watch the sun rise.

优化: Many people get up early **to jog** along country lanes, **to observe** the wonder of nature, **or just to watch** the sun rise.

(四) 含有非谓语动词短语的句子

非谓语动词包括: 动词不定式、动名词、现在分词和过去分词。使用非谓语动词可以在有限的空间内容纳更多的信息, 使句子结构紧凑、逻辑严谨。

如: 原句: It must be realized that people should be cautious when they decide which books they should choose to read since if they read bad books, it will be time-wasting and harmful.

优化: It must be realized that people should be cautious **when deciding which books to read** since **reading bad books** is time-wasting and harmful.

原句: Because one of my parents is laid off, my family can't possibly afford all my expenses at college.

优化: **With one of my parents being laid off**, my family can't possibly afford all my expenses at college.

(五) 含有谚语和格言的句子

如果能在作文中恰当地引用一两句谚语和格言,将会增加作文的表现力,展示出作者的语言功底,有助于获得阅卷老师的青睐。但需要注意的是,不要引用过于生僻或自己不太熟悉的谚语和格言,否则引用不当,反而会适得其反。另外,谚语和格言并不是越多越好,一般来说,一篇作文中引用一句就可以了,最多不要超过两句。

如: 原句: Doing part-time jobs has its disadvantages.

优化: **Every coin has two sides.** So does doing part-time jobs.

原句: Last but not the least, you need an intense interest in learning English.

优化: Last but not the least, you need an intense interest in learning English since **"Interest is the best teacher"**.

每日训练

1. Directions: The age of Information Technology has taken a lot of people by surprise. While it has become a way of life for some, others know very little about it and may be unlikely to learn. Eventually we will have a polarized society and this will lead to serious social problems.

To what extent do you agree or disagree with this statement?

You should use your own ideas, knowledge and experience and support your arguments with examples and relevant evidence.

Write at least 200 words.

2. Directions: In this part, you are required to write a composition of at least 250 words on the topic "Should Men and Women Be Equal?". You should write it on the answer sheet.

参考范文

1 The age of Information Technology has taken a lot of people by surprise. While it has become a way of life for some, others know very little about it and may be unlikely to learn. Eventually we will have a polarized society and this will lead to serious social problems.

To what extent do you agree with this statement?

At the mercy of the ever-accelerated advancement of the information technology, great changes have occurred in almost every sphere of our life. Apparently, some people have managed to be perfectly adapted to this completely new era, and a few of them even have developed their talent for the information technology as their lifetime career. However, there still exist a number of people who have little access to the advanced technology and are unlikely to be able to learn it in the future as well. Thus, this disquieting fact has inevitably led to our concerns that a polarized society with terrible

social problems is approaching.

It is without denying that the advent of the new era has brought about the ever-greater wealth for human beings. This has led some people to easily assume that a better life has been created for every member of the society. But pause and reflect! While the distribution of the wealth is considered, these people may not be so optimistic. According to the research carried out by a university in London, the great growth in gross domestic product has not resulted in the wealth being spread evenly across the population, to be exact, with 2% top taking away 71% of the increased wealth.

Therefore, we can hardly be surprised to observe that while the rich have benefited a lot from the rapid development of the information technology, the poor have struggled to attain the thinnest fruit. It can never be something surprising with regard to the mere fact that at the time a rich businessman is busy with his well-equipped commercial computer to harness the power of the Fnternet to carry on his business, a typical poor man are making great efforts to hunt for his next meal. Maybe this seemingly strange society is just following the law of Matthew effect, that is to say, “The rich get richer and the poor get poorer.”

All these on-going trends will inexorably give rise to a polarised society with the rich and poor placed on two extreme positions, which may form a negative confrontation between the two poles and result in some serious social problems.

2

Should Men and Women Be Equal?

Should men and women be equal? This is a question much talked about by many people. Some hold the opinion that men are superior to women in many ways. For one thing, many a job men do can hardly be done by women, who are physically not strong enough; and for another, most of the word-famous scientists or statesmen are found to be males. Moreover, the whole human society seems to have all along been dominated by men only. Isn't it evident enough to show that men are a lot stronger than women? Hence, the former should enjoy more rights than the latter.

Other people, however, think quite differently on this question. They firmly believe that men and women are born equal. And women are certainly as talented as men if they are given equal opportunities of education. Isn't it a fact known to us all that women have been working side by side with men in China and elsewhere in the world? Like their men folks, they have been distinguishing themselves not only in research institutions, but in government bodies and other organizations as well.

Personally, I am firmly standing on the side of those women's rights defenders. Since men and women are playing an equally important role in all human activities, why should not they be on an equal footing? Furthermore, from time immemorial, there have been two sex groups, namely, men and women. Our Human society could definitely not have existed or advanced without either of them. Is it a wonder that men and women ought to be equal and enjoy equal rights accordingly?

星期五

写作闪光句式

1. As can be indicated/is revealed/is showed in the table/graph/chart, /According to the figures given in the table, /As the survey results show, /This chart shows that /It can be seen from the statistics that ...

正如图表中显示的/根据表格中给出的数据/正如调查结果显示/如图所示/从数据中我们可以看出, ……

2. From ... to ... , there is a slight/slow/steady/rapid/dramatic/abrupt rise/increase in ...
从……年到……年, 在……方面有了轻微/缓慢/稳定/快速/巨大/急剧的增加。

3. During ... /... later, the demand/income/population/price/production of... has declined /decreased /fell /dropped rapidly/abruptly/markedly/sharply (from... to...).

在……期间/……时间以后, ……的需求/收入/产量//价格/产量已经(从……)急剧地下降(到……)。

4. The figure has nearly doubled/tripled, as against that of last year.

与去年相比, 这个数字几乎涨了两倍/三倍。

5. The number is ... times as much as that of...

数量是……的……倍。

6. By comparison with ... , it increased/decreased/fell from ... to...

与……相比, 它从……增加/下降到……

7. According to the figures given in the table, the number of ... has risen/declined dramatically in the past few years.

正如图表所示, 近年来……的数量有了显著增加。

8. From the chart we can see clearly that the number of... has increased/decreased from ... to... , and then to...

从图中我们可以清楚地看到, ……的数量已经从……上升或下降到……, 之后又(上升或下降)到……

9. An increasing number of... would rather... than...

越来越多的……宁愿……而不愿……

10. During the period between... and... , the percentage/number of... declined from... to ... , while the percentage/number of... rose from... to...

在……期间, ……的百分比或数量从……下降到……, 而……的百分比或数量却从……

- ……上升到……
11. This table provides several important points of comparison between...
表格中显示了几个重要的对比点：……
 12. There are some/two/many good reasons for ... /to do...
有一些/两点/许多理由……
 13. One of the main reasons for... is (that) ...
……的一个主要原因是……
 14. Among all these reasons/factors/causes, ... plays an important role.
在所有的原因中，……起着很关键的作用/是主要的一个。
 15. One may think of the trend as a result of ...
人们可能会认为该趋势是由于……
 16. The change in ... largely results from the fact that...
……方面的变化很大程度是因为……
 17. There are several causes for this significant growth in ... First...
有一些原因导致了在……方面的巨大增长。第一，……
 18. A number of factors contribute to this change.
许多因素导致这一变化。
 19. ... is an important/vital factor/reason for... /plays an important/vital role in...
……是导致……一个重要的原因/在……方面起到至关重要的作用。
 20. An increase/decrease in... results in/leads to/produces...
在……方面的增加或减少导致了……
 21. The reasons for this phenomenon may be obvious. /There may be some obvious reasons for this phenomenon.
可能有点很明显的原因导致该现象。
 22. ... is mainly due to the following reasons/factors.
……主要是由于以下原因/因素。
 23. There are many factors deciding/influencing...
有许多因素决定/影响……
 24. Effective measures should be taken as soon as possible to...
应该尽快采取有效的措施来……
 25. It is an urgent thing to take effective methods to solve this problem.
当务之急是采取有效的方法解决这一问题。
 26. Facing... , we should try our bests to figure out the ways to change this situation.
面对……，我们应该努力想办法改变这种形式。
 27. The following ways can be taken to...
下列方法能够被用来……
 28. ... is an effective way to... .
……是一个……的有效方法。
 29. By doing... , one person can...
通过……，一个人可以……
 30. In order to... , ... should...
为了……，……应该……
 31. Taking the above-mentioned into consideration/Considering the serious effects of the

problem, I think, it is high time that we took effective measures/for us to take effective measures to...

鉴于以上所述/考虑到问题的严重性, 我认为, 该是时候采取有效的措施来……

32. We must look for all immediate method, because the present situation of ... , if permitted to continue, will sure lead to/result in...

我们必须立刻寻找解决办法, 因为现在的……形势如果继续下去的话, 势必会导致……

33. There is no immediate solution to the problem of ... , but... might be helpful/beneficial.问题并没有立竿见影的解决办法, 但是……可能会所有帮助。

34. No easy method can be at hand to solve the problem of ... , but the general awareness of the necessity/importance of ... might be the first step on the right way.

目前还没有任何简单的办法能够解决……问题, 但是, 使人们普遍认识到……必要性/重要性或许有效的第一步。

35. To reverse the trend is not a light task, and it requires keen consciousness of...

要扭转这一趋势并不容易, 它需要对……具有敏锐意识。

36. Different people have / hold different opinions / views on the question / problem / matter. Some believe that ... ; Others argue that ... (; Still others maintain that ...)

对于这一问题, 人们的看法各不相同。一些人认为……, 其他人认为…… (, 还有一些人坚持……)

37. Some people hold the opinion that... , while others argue that...

一些人认为……, 然而其他人争辩说……

38. When it comes to... , different people offer different views.

当谈到/涉及……时, 不同的人有不同的看法。

39. As to... , there is no consensus/complete agreement among people.

关于……, 人们的看法不一。

40. They think quite differently on this question.

他们对这一问题的看法完全不同。

41. Opinions vary from individual to individual, from culture to culture.

不同的人, 不同的文化, 对这一问题的看法都不相同。

42. However, still some other people/others think differently/do not agree this/hold the opposite opinion.

然而, 还有一些人持不同的观点。

43. Faced with... , quite a few people argue that... , but other people conceive differently.

面对……, 相当一部分认为……, 但是其他人并不认同。

44. Now it is commonly held that... , but I doubt whether...

现在人们普遍认为……, 但是我怀疑是否……

45. A is to B what/ as C is to D.

A 之于 B, 就像 C 之于 D。

46. In contrast (to) ... /On the contrary, ...

与之形成对比的是/相反, ……

47. Just as... , so...

正如……, ……也一样。

48. A and B have... in common/have many common...

- A 和 B 有共同的……
49. The same is true of... /The same can be said of...
同样的情况也适用于……
50. Although it may bring unfavorable consequences, we can be sure to conclude that this practice is favorable on the whole.
尽管这可能会带来不利的影响,但是我们可以确定这种做法从整体上来说是有利的。
51. The advantages of A are much greater than B.
A 的好处明显大于 B。
52. Compared with B, A has many advantages.
和 B 相比, A 有许多优点/能带来许多好处。
53. The advantages outweigh the disadvantages.
利大于弊。
54. Although A enjoys considerable advantage over... , it cannot compete with B in...
尽管 A 在……方面有相当大的优势,但它在……方面不能和 B 相比。
55. Contrary to widely accepted views, I believe that...
与普遍接受的观点相反,我认为……
56. It is one thing to... , it is quite another to...
……是一回事,但……就是另外一回事了。
57. ... has drawbacks as well as merits.
……既有缺点也有优点。
58. A is superior/inferior to B (in...)
A (在……方面) 优于/劣于 B。
59. A is just the opposite (to B).
A 恰恰与 B 相反。
60. A differs from B in that...
A 不同于 B 的是……
61. A is not the same as B.
A 不同于 B。
62. There is a general discussion today about the issue of ... /Currently there is a widespread concern on...
现在对于……存在广泛的讨论/关注。
63. Now people in growing number are coming to realize/More and more people are realizing /have come to realize...
现在越来越多的人逐渐/已经开始意识到……
64. Recently/In recent years, the phenomenon/issue/problem of... has been brought into focus/ aroused public attention/become a heated topic/ been in the limelight.
近年来,……现象/问题成为公众关注的焦点。
65. With (the steady/rapid/amazing development of) ... , people begin to... /there arises a heated debate as to...
随着…… (的稳定/快速/惊人的发展), 人们开始……/出现了……的热烈讨论。
66. Nowadays, our society is witnessing more and more...
目前, 社会上有越来越多的……
67. In the past/last/recent... years, there has been a sharp increase/decrease in... /...

has experienced an alarming rise/decline (in ...) According to an official report/survey/poll...

在过去的……年，在……方面有了急剧的增长/下降。根据一项官方报告/调查/民意测验，……

68. Until recently/For years, ... has/have been regarded/viewed as... But some people are taking a fresh look at it.

直到最近/许多年来，……一直被认为是……但是现在一些人对它有了新的认识。

69. Most people used to... /In the past, ... But many people don't share this view any more now.

大多数人过去……/过去……，但是现在许多人不再这样认为。

70. It is a tradition/custom/practice/traditional way (to ...) But now/in recent decades things have changed.

……是一个传统/惯例/传统的方式。但是现在/近几十年来，情况已经发生了变化。

71. Nowadays there is no agreement among people as to... Some people... while others may...

现在对于……人们（看法或做法）并不一致，一些人……，然而其他人可能……

72. When asked... , a great majority of people/most people... But I think quite differently.

当被问及……时，大多数人会……但是我有不同的看法。

73. When it comes to... /When faced with/In the face of... , quite a few people claim that ... , while other people argue...

当谈到/面对……时，相当一部分人相信……，然后也有一些人认为……

74. Now, it is commonly/generally/widely believed/acknowledged/accepted that...

现在，人们普遍认为/承认/接受……

75. Now there is a growing awareness/recognition of the necessity to... /Now people are becoming increasingly aware/conscious of the importance of ...

现在人们越来越意识到……的必要性/重要性。

76. ... , which has been generally accepted. The truth of it is deep and profound/self-evident.

……一直被人们普遍接受。其中的道理是深远的/明显的。

77. Should/What... ? Opinions on/Attitudes towards/Answers to the question vary from person to person.

……？对于这个问题的看法/态度/回答因人而异。

78. "Why do/ have ... ?" Many people often ask/pose the question like this.

为什么……？许多人经常问/提出这样的问题。

79. There is an old/popular saying/proverb which goes that... . The truth of it is profound and significant. / Under its simplified cover, a truth is ironically pointed out, that is, ... 有一句古老/流行的谚语说，“……”其中的道理意义深远。/简单的话语中蕴含着具有讽刺意味的事实，那就是……

80. One great... had ever said/once remarked, "... " Now it still has a realistic/profound significance. / It is still working in our modern society. / The remark is still confirmed by people in today's society.

一位伟大的……曾经说过：“……”现在这句话仍然具有现实/深远的意义。/在现代社会这个道理仍然适用。/在今天的社会中仍然有许多人相信这一点。

81. From the above-mentioned /what has been discussed above, /Judging from all evidence offered, we may safely arrive at/draw/come to/reach the conclusion that ...
综上所述, 我们可以合理地得出结论: ……
82. Taking into account/Considering all these factors, /In view of the above-mentioned facts, we should...
考虑到这些因素/鉴于以上事实, 我们应该……
83. It is no doubt/denying that/ There is little/no doubt/denying that (considerable attention must be paid to) ...
毫无疑问, (我们必须多加关注) ……
84. It is, therefore, obvious/evident that... require immediate attention.
因此, 很显然……需要立刻引起注意。
85. It is high time/It is an urgent thing that we put considerable/great/special emphasis on ...
当务之急是重点关注……
86. In a word, it takes our common efforts/is everyone's responsibility to...
总之, ……需要我们共同努力/是我们每一个人的责任。
87. Only in this way/through these ways/when all measures go into action can the problem of... be solved in near future... /can we...
只有这样/所有的措施付诸行动的时候, 问题才能够在不久的将来得以解决。/我们才能……
88. Therefore, think it over and make full preparation before you decide to... . /we should take a full account before we make our decisions.
因此, 在决定……之前要考虑周全并作好充分的准备/我们应该仔细考虑之后再作决定。
89. Given the factors that I have just outlined, it is wise to support the statement that...
鉴于我刚才提到的因素, 支持……观点是明智的。
90. All the available/striking evidence goes to show that... /points to the fact that...
一切现有的/有力的证据表明, ……
91. All the evidence / analysis supports / confirms an unmistakable / unshakable conclusion /a sound view that ...
所有证据/分析都证实了一个毫不动摇的结论/合理的观点: ……
92. The conclusion is self-evident ...
结论不言而喻: ……
93. Weighing up these two arguments/Taking into account all these factors, I am for... /I prefer ...
权衡这两种观点/考虑到这些因素, 我支持/宁愿……
94. Weighing the pros and cons of... , we can naturally arrive at the conclusion that...
权衡……的利弊, 我们可以自然地得出这样的结论: ……
95. Clearly/Obviously/No doubt, if we cannot... / if we ignore/are blind to... , it is very likely that...
显然, 如果我们不能/如果我们忽视……, 很可能……
96. Any person/nation/society who/which ignores/is blind to/fails to... would pay a heavy price.

任何人/民族/社会忽视/没能……，他/它都将付出沉重的代价。

97. If we work on ... from now on, in foreseeable future, we will not be cursed/overwhelmed by the same dilemma/problem.

如果我们从现在开始努力……，那么在不久的将来，我们将不会再为相同的难题所困扰。

98. If we can solve the problem with no efforts spared, human being will not be caught/stuck in the same conditions.

如果我们能够不遗余力地解决这一问题，人类将不会再陷入相同的困境。

99. Following these methods may not guarantee the success in... , but the pay-off will be worth the sweat we shed.

这些办法或许无法保证成功地……，但这种努力是值得的。

100. It is essential/necessary/important/imperative that effective/quick/proper measures/actions/ steps should be taken to...

必要的是采取有效/快速/适当的方法/行动来……

每日训练

Directions: You are asked to write in no less than 200 words about the title of **Harmful Plagiarism in Academic Field in China**. You should base your composition on the outline given in Chinese below. Remember to write neatly on the **ANSWER SHEET**.

目前在学术界出现了剽窃和抄袭等不良现象。作为一名未来的博士研究生，你如何看待这些现象，你认为应该如何制止，以及你应该如何从自身做起。

Harmful Plagiarism in Academic Field in China

参考范文1

Now there are lots of plagiarisms in academic field in China. Some people cite others' papers or opinions without noting them. Some people send their same article to different magazines and permit editors from different magazines to publish it. What is worse, some people even copy others' articles wholly, only using their names instead of the authors' names. These things occurred on some famous professors not long ago.

These plagiarisms do harm to academic field's purity. These actions infract the original authors' legal rights. To professors, their plagiarism set a bad example to their students as well as cause chaos and inefficiency in academic field. To postgraduates, their plagiarisms change their progress into dream, only with gray future coming to them.

How to change these conditions? We should judge professors both by researching and teaching. If a professor doesn't do well in researching, we can rate them by examining their teaching. We can regard them as good professors in teaching and give them some benefits for their good teaching. Also, managers in universities should abolish the prescript that every postgraduate must deliver a paper before graduate. Some universities like Nanjing Normal University has already abrogated that prescript, and other universities can learn from it.

参考范文2

No one in this world hates to be successful, but each person has his or her own definition of success. With regard to academic field in China, an academician may define “success” as the so-called achievement in the production of academic research papers, which has, even though we officially hate to admit it, long and firmly been imposed upon anyone that works in a research institute, a school, even in a government organ for public service. Therefore, if you want to mount to the peak of success, you have to, First of all, mount up a big mountain of papers!

However, it is not such an easy task for every person to pursue for that goal, though it may not be qualified as a kind of “mission impossible”. Some producers of academic papers, whether they are regarded as “cunning”, “smart” or “lazy bones”, may write “efficiently” by means of plagiarism and finally takes an unexpected shortcut to further his steps to success. The problem emerged along with people's growing outlook of materialism and utilitarianism and has now become pervasive in a few areas.

Needless to say, plagiarism is like a disease that will contaminate academic circle and cause long-term bruise on the pure land of science and civilization because it grows the seed of distrust and unbalance. It impedes the passion and creativity of an excellent researcher let alone the average ones. It blinds people's eyes to see the truth and find the most valuable things. On the other hand, plagiarism is a drug that may poison the one who uses it and if so, it will definitely make him addicted to it.

The causes of plagiarism in our society vary a lot. But most importantly, it is a sin out of the unhealthy environment, or to be exact, the malfunctioning system of evaluation on a man's academic performance as well as his aptitudes. The seriousness of the problem has been looming up more attractively. There is a strong appeal to academic purity and self-creation of all sides involved. It is believed that plagiarism scourges from personal needs. But I prefer to believe that if there occurs a top-down reform in the system of individual evaluation, say, to adopt a more comprehensive and genuine standard to assess one's ability and performance, none of us will bother to plagiarize others' works.

写作过程就是作者将平时积累的思想用文字的形式具体地表达出来。它是作者深邃思想历程的自然流露，是流淌在纸张上的思想表白。同时，写作要符合语法、句法、句子结构等的要求，也受到段落层次、篇章结构等的限制。英语的写作除应用文外，一般分成记叙、描写、说明、议论四种。这里主要讲议论文的写作，同时还有图表作文、情景作文等。

一、开头段的写作技巧

开头段是全文的引言，既要点题、表明观点，又要为中间核心段的具体论述做好铺垫但是一定要新颖、独特，切忌离题太远，内容空洞无物，讲了半天，读者还不知道你要说什么。因此，一篇好的文章开头一般具有以下几个特点。

一是新，即新颖，它可以是内容上的新颖也可以是形式上的新颖。

二是奇，就是奇特，通过超常规的东西来吸引读者。

三是险，指的是惊险，这特别表现在文艺作品的开头。

四是深，指深刻，要具有哲理深度或含蓄深邃。

五是美，指优美，特别体现在情感的抒发和风景的描绘上。

六是引人入胜，扣人心弦，尽可能吸引读者的注意力。尽管文章的开头可以各显神通。

七是简明扼要。

开头段的作用是表达观点、开启话题，为下文的论述作准备，因此，如果有要陈述的论据，务必要简单明晰，切中要害，切忌啰唆。

具体到考博英语的写作，三段论的写法可以归结为：

第一段开篇提出作者的观点。

第二段过渡并承接上文，引证种种例子，进一步论证作者之观点（也可以引证相反的观点及论据，据此从反面论证某一观点的必要性）。

第三段总结全文的观点，提出作者的基本主张和看法。

具体来说，文章的开头可以有以下几种写法：

1. 以格言、引语开头

Time

Time and tide wait for no man. This is a proverb we learned in high school. Simple as it is, it tells an everlasting truth of life. Time never stops for anyone or anything, so all have to surrender to its quick-passing steps. The pressing problem then is: how to make

good use of it?

People may have different attitudes to it.

2. 以定义法开头

Hope

What is hope? According to the Greek and Roman mythology, hope is the last thing that is left in Pandora's box. It is something that always stays with pen-pie no matter what kind of misfortune has happened, and encourages people to fight with the misfortune until the last moment. Anyone who has some experiences will agree that life is hard.

3. 以开宗明义、直抒胸臆的句子开头

On Books

Books are of various kinds and have different contents. We have history books recording past events, geography books dealing with the earth, and language books dealing with the means of communication and literary books reflecting social problems. In a word, we have various books tackling different occurrence in the world. Then, what is the function of reading?

4. 以数字开头

According to a recent survey, about 78.9% of the college students wanted to further their study after their graduation.

5. 现象法开头

Advantages and Disadvantages of Advertisements

Nowadays, it is difficult to find a public place without advertisements. We read ads in the press, watch them on the television, and hear them over the radio. Even when we watch a ball game, ads will meet our eyes.

6. 以扣人心弦的故事材料开头

I still vividly remember that painful Friday afternoon 10 years ago. I was detained by my Chinese teacher until mid-night simply because I failed to recite the text. The torturing experience makes me believe that rote learning has little positive in the modern education system.

7. 以引用语开头

Once a Thief, Always a Thief

Be careful of him. Maybe he will steal something from you. He was once a thief. We often hear others talking about somebody like this. People often do not believe a person who has once been a thief. But if one person has once been a thief, is always a thief?

Some people believe that once a person has committed some kind of crime, he will never be a respectable man. They think that the fact that a person once has been a thief shows that he wants to be a thief in his deep heart.

8. 以记叙开始

My Teaching Experience

After teaching three years in Shanghai, I decided to go to a remote area. I finally made it. I have always thought that experts should be sent not only to big towns where

there are a lot of opportunities to talk to English speakers, but also to remote areas. My experiences in Nanping, Fujian strengthened my opinions.

I recently spent a month in Nanping, teaching English to teachers of English from northern Fujian. It was an experience that I would never forget.

9. 提出问题式开头

Hobbies

What do you think of the role of hobbies in your daily life? Do you have any hobbies? It's well-known that hobbies can enrich our spare time, mold our characters and free us from the severe pressure deriving from the competition concerning work and study as well.

Different people have different hobbies. Some people like active hobbies, that is, sports such as playing football or basketball, jogging, swimming and skating.

二、中间段的写作技巧

1 中间段的布局框架

文章的三个段落即三个组成部分都各司其职，各有其特殊的功能，而中间段（第二段）则是全文中至关重要的一段，文章的好坏与否、最后的得分高低主要是由这一部分决定的，因此，我们应该尽最大的努力写好这一段。中间段是全文的重点所在，是最能体现、评述作者观点的段落，因此这一段的内容最为翔实，形式结构最为多样。

这一段的段首句，即 Topic Sentence 或者这一段的 Sub-topic（次标题）句，具有继续表达作者在第一段里所提出观点的承接功能，同时又要将文章引入下面具体的论证部分，是连接文章的头和主体（body）的关口，是这一段的重点所在，处理得好，会有“柳暗花明又一村”的轻松感。从某种意义上说，文章的开头（title）就像一个人的大脑，而中间段（核心段）则是心脏地带，因此，中间段的段首句就像一个瓶子的“瓶颈”一样，承接得好，文章下面的写作如行云流水，任意驰骋；而如果处理得不好，就会“堵塞交通”，使思路受阻，影响到文章写作。

2 中间段的具体写法

因为这一段要进行具体论述，篇幅要占到全文的 2/3 左右，这就要求我们在写作过程中要做到意思完整、统一、连贯。为了达到这一目的，我们在把这一段分成几个层次论述时，务必要注意层次之间的转换，不能颠倒次序或不顾逻辑地随意乱写。另外，还要注意层次间的连贯性，保证全段是一个统一的整体。

具体来说，中间段落可以有以下几种写法：

（1）时间顺序法

时间顺序法即按时间顺序展开段落。在讲述一个故事或描述一个事件时，用时间顺序法可以使读者按时间的脉络清楚地掌握段落中所陈述的内容。表示时间的词语有：after, after a short (long) time, afterwards, as soon as, when, while, since then, at last, lately, shortly, since, recently, finally, immediately, from that time on, then, nowadays 等。

（2）空间顺序法

空间顺序法是指按空间顺序展开段落。对静态事物可按自上而下、由左至右、从远而

近、由表及里(或相反的方向)来描述。而对动态事物的描述则取决于物体的实际运行路线,可以是线型的,也可以是曲折的,这种方法主要用于描写文、记叙文和说明文。表明方位的词语有: to the right, in the distance, straight ahead, on the left, above, below, between, adjacent to, under, beyond, around, next to, close to, opposite to, on top of, over, across from 等。

(3) 分类法

分类法是按一定的标准,把人或事物分成若干类别,再对其逐一进行说明和阐述。运用分类法要注意分类标准的统一、分类的逻辑性及分类的完整性。分类法常用表达方式有: divide ... into ... , fall into, be classified, there are ... kinds (types, sorts, etc.) of, first, second, next 等。

(4) 过程推展法

过程推展法是用来解释某些自然或社会现象,按其发展过程来客观地进行描述的方法,这种方法主要用于说明文及论述文。

表示递增的词语有: additionally, further, furthermore, in addition (to), likewise, moreover, another, besides, too 等。

表示顺序的词语有: first, second... etc., in the first (second) place, to begin with, for one thing... for another... , first of all, last of all, least importantly, most importantly, to end with 等。

(5) 定义法

定义法是对事物的本质特征或对某一概念的内涵和外延作出明确阐述的方法。下定义有3种基本方法:

- 1) 给出同义词
- 2) 整句说明(通常用定语从句)
- 3) 用一段或一篇文章来加以说明

定义法常用的词语有: mean, refer to, be defined as, in other words, namely 等。

(6) 比较与对比法

比较法主要显示人与人之间、物与物之间的相同之处,而对比则展示其不同之处。比较和对比可以用分开比和交叉比两种方法展开,是说明文常用的写作技巧。表示比较、近似的词语有: also, likewise, similarly, equally (+ adjective), in a like manner, in the same way 等。表示对照的词语有: however, whereas, but, yet, still, in contrast (to), on the contrary, on the one hand, on the other hand 等。

(7) 因果法

因果法是利用因果分析来展开段落。因果分析中最重要的一个特性是合理的推论,即正确的逻辑关系。一般采用前果后因的顺序展开,但当一“因”多“果”时,我们往往采用相反的顺序。表示原因的词有: because, because of, since, for, as, owing to, due to, for this reason 等。表示结果的词有: so, thus, consequently, hence, therefore, as a result 等。

(8) 例证法

例证法是列举典型、生动具体的事例对较复杂的抽象概念或观点进行阐述的一种方法。这种方法化抽象为具体,使读者易于理解抽象的观点和概念。常用于说明文、论说文。表示例证的词有: such as, as an example, for example, for instance, in fact, that is, to illustrate ... , take... as an illustration 等。

三、结尾段的写作技巧

根据我们前面所讲的“三段论”写作模式，文章最后的一小段结尾段是最能体现作者观点的一段。这一段虽短，但正是在这一段里，作者将在首段所提的观点，经过中间段翔实而有力的论证之后，在这里进行浓缩、总结、概括。结尾段一般都独立成段，比较短小，有时为了意思的完整性则有可能将最后一小段与中间段合并。但是在考试中，特别是在段首句作文或有提示的作文中一般应写成独立的一小段。好的结尾一般都具有三个特点：一是简洁有力；二是出人意料；三是寓意无穷。

结尾段的写作一般有以下几种方法：

1. 总结全文

...

Hence, to a certain degree, students benefit a lot from part-time jobs if they can keep a good balance between working and learning. With plenty of social experiences, they will grow more independent and gain more understanding.

本文用 More and more 一句以现象描述开头。然后用 Then, why... 一句作为过渡句，中间段用列举法。用 Hence... 一句总结全文，结尾段和开头段一样都是短小精悍。

与前面所讲的“开宗明义”相反，有的文章，在结尾时才阐明其中心思想，表达作者的明确观点，这就是通常所谓的“卒章显志”，其特点是，直接总结全文，将作者的观点或全文的中心思想在最后进行高度概括，和盘托出。其特点是平直明确，具有归纳性和总结性。

2. 首尾呼应

针对开头所讲的观点、看法，在结尾段中提出一个满意的解决方案。

Introduction paragraph:

A person born in the twentieth century has seen many changes take place in almost all areas of human life. Some people are excited by the challenges that these changes offer, while others long to return to the simpler, less automated life-style of the past. Living in the twentieth century has certain advantages, such as a higher standard of living, but it also has some disadvantages, such a polluted environment, the depersonalization of human relationships and the weakening of spiritual values.

Conclusion paragraph:

In conclusion, although the twentieth century has indeed given us a lot of advantages by making us richer, healthier and freer to enjoy our lives, it has, in my opinion, not made us wiser. The twentieth century has also made our Earth dirtier, our people less humane and our spiritual lives poorer. We should continue to enjoy the benefits of technological advancements because they free us to pursue our interests and goals. However, we must make concerted efforts to preserve our natural environment for future generations. Moreover, we should take the time now to make our lives more meaningful in an increasingly impersonal, mechanized world.

3. 终局点睛

终局点睛指的是在文章的末尾用一两句含义丰富的话点出全篇的主旨所在，用含蓄、委婉的方法来曲折隐晦地表达作者的思想，使文章的主题得到升华。

...

When comparing men and women in the matter of fashion, the conclusions to be drawn are obvious. Do the constantly changing fashions of women's clothes, one wonders, reflect basic qualities of inconstancy and instability? Men are too clever to let themselves be cheated by fashion designers. Do their unchanging styles of dress reflect basic qualities of stability and reliability? That is for you to decide.

4. 提出建议, 发出号召

...

All in all, with people's standards of living getting higher and higher, changes in their diet are bound to occur and will become more apparent and greater.

用“According to ...”来开头是比较常见的方法。“There are two factors ...”一句既是过渡句又是第二段的主题句。整个中间段用“For one thing, ... For another, ...”分为两层, 思路清晰。用All in all来总结全文, 同时, 也对未来提出展望。

通过设问或反问来结束全文。

...

If there were no homework on weekends, students would come to school on Monday well refreshed and willing to study. Teachers, don't you agree?

用反问结尾, 虽然形式是问句, 但意义却是肯定的, 具有明显的强调作用, 引起读者思考。

每日训练

1. Directions: Write an essay of no less than 200 words on the topic given below. Use the proper space on your ANSWER SHEET.

What does work mean to you? Is it just a means to make ends meet and to cover life expenses?

2. Directions: Write an essay of no less than 200 words on **Private Cars**. Use the proper space on your ANSWER SHEET.

参考范文

1

The Meaning of Work

For many people, a job means a good salary which can make ends meet and cover life expenses. In my opinion, however, the meaning of work is more than a good salary. To me, the kind of job worthy of devotion means creation and contribution.

Work means new creations to the society. As science and technology progress, computers and robots are used widely. We might sometimes doubt the necessity of our very existence. Yet creative jobs, such as teaching, writing, scientific research, and management, which require a lot wisdom and imagination or involve many understandings, will build up self-confidence in ourselves and help to push our civilization further. During the process of creation, our work will constantly provide us with challenges so that we can develop and improve ourselves.

Work also means the contribution one can make which will lead our country to

prosperity. I remember that the first time I came to Beijing, on the train I was shocked with some shabby huts, which were actually people's dwelling places. Those huts kept flashing into my mind, reminding me of our duty to help people out of such a life. Therefore, work does not only mean something about one's own life, but something also about a bright future for our country and our people.

People can gain enjoyment from creative and contributive work. If you do not enjoy your work, even if it brings you a very good salary, you are not really leading a happy and meaningful life.

2

Private Cars

A few years ago, having a private car might be a wild dream to many Chinese families. But today, you can see the number of private cars running along the road and street is increasing rapidly. Statistics show that one in every six families in big cities has a car. Some people say that it is good because the number of car ownerships indicates a country's auto industry, which in turn shows the country's general economic development. The fact that more and more people can afford a car demonstrates that people in China enjoy a higher standard of living than they did before. Besides, a private car also adds a new dimension to a family's work, daily life and leisure activities.

Other people think differently. They argue that having private cars may not necessarily mean a more advanced society. It may bring about more stress, instead. More cars would consume more petroleum, produce more air pollution, and thus aggravate the already serious environmental problems. What's more, another problem remains yet to be solved. Road conditions being what they are especially in urban areas, accidents become a common occurrence, resulting in thousands of deaths per year. No wonder cars have been considered as the number one deadly weapon in the modern world.

I find some truth in both of the arguments mentioned above. I feel it a personal choice to buy a private car. If you can afford it and you really need it to get around, having a car is fine. But remember, try to use environment-friendly type of gasoline and take special care while driving. If you don't have much need for cars in your work and life, there is no need to follow fashion or keep up with the Jones. Remember, when you cycle, you are living a healthy life and at the same time contributing to our environment protection.



星期日

本周测试

Test 1

Directions: In this part, you are expected to write a composition entitled Looking Forward to the New Reform of College English in China in no less than 200 words. Your composition should be based on the following outlines.

1. 有些人认为随着各种高水平电子课件的制作与引进,大学生基本上可以自学英语了。
2. 有些人认为大学英语老师虽面临挑战,但不可或缺。
3. 我对中国大学英语教学改革的想法与建议。

Test 2

Directions: In this part, you are expected to write a composition entitled **Pressures of Modern Man** in no less than 200 words. Your composition should be based on the following outlines.

1. 现代人会遇到各种各样的压力。
2. 压力的来源。
3. 如何减轻自己的压力。

Test 3

Directions: Write a composition on the title “Is University Expansion a Good Thing?” based on the following given outline. Your composition should be about 200 English words. Please write your composition on the **ANSWER SHEET**.

Outline:

Some people say that the recent increased enrollment of university students is a good thing.

Others hold the opposite view.

Your opinion.

Test 4

Directions: In this part, you are to write within 30 minutes a composition of no less than 200 words about **On the Food Security**.

Test 1

Looking Forward to the New Reform of College English in China

With the advent of the computer age, all kinds of advanced English courseware have sprung up like mushrooms. In some people's view, the production and introduction of various kinds of English courseware mean that students can teach themselves English. They even think that English teachers can be replaced by electronic courseware. I don't agree with them. College students' teaching themselves English by means of courseware is really a challenge to their teachers, but they still need their teachers' advice. For example, what some students choose may be either too easy or too difficult for them. In class, their teachers can give them some advice on what kinds of courseware are suitable for their levels. If they don't go to the classroom, they will lose their opportunity to communicate with their teachers and classmates in class. In my opinion, combining courseware with traditional English teaching methods is absolutely necessary. But if we stress too much the role of courseware in English teaching and learning and even abandon our traditional teaching methods, it will be unfavorable to the English teaching reform in China.

Test 2

Pressures of Modern Man

With the fast pace of the contemporary life, people in the modern times are facing all kinds of pressures. Workers fear that they will be laid off when there is an economic recession. Farmers are afraid that flood or drought will prevent them from getting a bumper harvest. Here I should like to make a special mention of students. Primary school students have their pressures. If they cannot be enrolled to a key high school, their parents will feel disappointed. High school students also live under pressures. Their parents hope that they can go to universities so that they can find a satisfactory job after graduation. University students are no exceptions. During their university lives, they have to study hard and pass all the exams arranged by schools and countries. Otherwise, they can't get their diplomas. Students without diplomas can hardly find their jobs.

As far as I am concerned, living in this world is by no means an easy thing. I have to work hard and earn enough money to support my jobless parents, jobless wife and daughter. So to speak, I am a member of the sandwich generation. But I am not afraid of pressure whenever I meet with it. Now I who have a good state of mind have become accustomed to pressures, which is to me the driving force rather than the disincentive to my career development.

Test 3

Is University Expansion a Good Thing?

Many colleges and universities have expanded their enrollment since 1998. There are several reasonable advantages for the expansion. Firstly, this can keep up with the need of the job market to produce more qualified people to take up the jobs. Secondly, the

expansion has entitled many high school graduates to the right of receiving higher education. Last but not least, it can raise the intellectual standards of our nation.

However, studies show that the trend to expand has brought about many problems. For instance, the teaching facilities and accommodation capacities of many colleges and universities are limited and are unable to meet the demand of an ever-increasing number of the newly enrolled students. On the other hand, the average quality of the freshmen is declining. In the long run, hunting for a job will be a tough thing for the graduates and that will inevitably exert much pressure on the prospects of employment.

In spite of all these, I am still confident that the expansion of enrollment is of great benefit to our society and is a good thing. With the development of our national economy, the problem as mentioned above will be solved if proper measures are taken.

Test 4

Over the past couple of years, several cases of the food scandal have been disclosed on various media. The problem of food security has become a hot topic in modern society. The prevalence of food insecurity has greatly threatened public health, which the government could not afford to ignore.

There are a couple of driving forces, I would argue, behind this undesirable tide. First, in the course of rapid economic evolution, we ignore moral education, giving rise to the rising problems on food. Second, the lack of adequate regulation and punishment on those illegal producers enforces the trend.

Prompt and strict measures should be taken to turn back this evil trend. The government should launch a massive moral campaign to educate all citizens and draw up tough laws to crack down on those irresponsible corporations and prohibit them from entering the food industry again.

I am firmly convinced that through our combined efforts we are bound to enjoy more risk-free foods in the days ahead.

求职信常用句型:

Introduction 开头

1. In today's newspaper I noticed your advertisement for...
从今天的报纸上我注意到你们的广告……
2. Through... , I have learned that you are hiring...
通过……我了解到你们要雇佣……
3. It has come to my attention that the position of... is now open.
我了解到……职位是空缺的。
4. I would like to apply for / to be considered as a candidate for the job / post / position / scholarship advertised in... / (that) I saw advertised in... / I have just seen in the...
我从……看到……, 想申请……工作/职位/奖学金。
5. I am interested in/seeking a challenging position in your firm.
我有兴趣在贵公司谋求一个具有挑战性的职位。

Motivation and Expectations 动机与期待

6. If my application is successful, I should/would like to...
如果接受我的申请, 我将……
7. If such experience would be valuable to your office, I...
如果此类经历对贵公司有利的话, 我将……
8. I wish to become involved in...
我希望参与……
9. I am available for a personal interview if you are interested in my application.
如果您对我的申请感兴趣, 我想与您见个面。
10. I would appreciate an interview at your convenience.
在您方便的时候见个面吧。

Qualifications and Experience 资格与经验

11. I feel I am well qualified (to... /for...) for the following reasons.
我觉得我能胜任……理由如下。
12. I have had experience of... / done... before, / studied therefore I may have the ability you are looking for.
我有经验, 曾做过/学过……我是你们要找的人。

13. Along with my education, I have had job experience which...
除了学历之外, 我有……的工作经验。
14. My interest and skill in... contribute to my qualification for this job.
我有……兴趣和技能, 能胜任此工作。
15. You will see from my resume that I have had both training and experience in the field of...
从简历中您可以了解我在……领域受过培训, 并有这方面的经验。
16. Though I have never done... I am well aware of...
尽管我没做过……但我明白……

Enclosure 附件

17. I have enclosed / attached a copy of my resume for your consideration.
随信附上我的简历复印件一份, 以供参考。
18. I am enclosing my resume to provide further details about my experience / to give details of my responsibilities in that job.
随信附我的简历复印件一份, 以便您进一步了解我的工作经验和详细职责。
19. I have enclosed a copy of my curriculum vitae and will gladly provide any further information you may require.
随信附我的课程表一份, 以便您进一步了解我的其他信息。
20. The enclosed resume will give you the details and scope of my previous experience.
随信附我的简历一份, 以便您进一步了解我之前的工作经历。

投诉信常用句型:

1. I am writing to you to complain about ...
我写信投诉……
2. I am writing to express my dissatisfaction with ...
我写信是因为我对……不满意。
3. I am afraid that I have to inform you that...
我很遗憾地告知您……
4. I am completely disappointed/ upset to find...
我对……感到失望/不安。
5. There are some problems with... that I wish to bring to attention. In the first place... In the second place...
我有一些问题需要您引起注意, 首先……其次……
6. To reverse this situation, it is advisable/ desirable/ recommended/ suggested that...
要改变这样的局面, 我建议……
7. To improve the situation, it is advisable to take the following measures. For one thing ... For another...
改进这样的局势, 我建议采取下面的措施, 一方面……另一方面……
8. I sincerely hope that it will review its management system, with the view to (doing) ...
由于……我真诚地希望对管理体系进行审查。
9. I look forward to a day when we could...
我期待有一天我们能够……

10. I do hope that the problems will be solved as soon as possible.
我希望尽快解决问题。
11. I hope my suggestions will be taken into consideration to improve the situation.
为改变局势，我希望你们能考虑我的建议。
12. If it is not properly settled, I would like to demand a refund, or I would complain to the Consumers Association.
如果解决不当，我要退款，否则我将向消协投诉你们。
13. We believe that you will take this matter seriously from now on and make every effort to prevent its recurrence.
我们认为你们会认真对待这件事，竭力防止其再发生。
14. I find it awful/appalling/quite distressing that...
我觉得非常沮丧/震惊/苦恼……
15. I can no longer tolerate/bear/put up with...
我再也不能忍受……

邀请信常用句型:

1. I am pleased to invite you to participate in... to be held from... to... in...
很高兴邀请您参加从……到……在……举行的……
2. It is my pleasure/a great honor for me to invite you to...
很荣幸地邀请您……
3. It is my pleasure to extend an invitation to you to go traveling with me.
很高兴邀请您和我一起旅游。
4. I hope that you won't decline my invitation.
我希望您不要拒绝我的邀请。
5. I will cover all the expenses involved.
我负责所有费用。
6. We were wondering if the session could consist of...
我们想知道会议是否包含……
7. Would you please let me know as soon as possible if you can accept my invitation?
能否接受邀请，请尽快给我们一个答复。
8. If you accept we shall, of course, pay you a fee plus expenses.
如果接受邀请，我们当然负责会费和花销。
9. I do hope you will be able to accept our invitation.
希望您能接受邀请。
10. Do you agree to my arrangement? If you could prefer different arrangements, we shall fit in with them.
我的安排妥当否？如果您有什么不同的安排，我们会考虑。
11. I am looking forward to your reply, and eventually, seeing you.
期待您的答复，也期待见到您。

求学信常用句型:

1. I wish to pursue my Master's degree in your prestigious university.
我想在贵校攻读硕士学位。

2. I wish to apply for admission to your department as a postgraduate student.
我想申请考贵系的研究生。
3. I am greatly interested in your graduate program in College of Law and wish to apply for admission.
我对法学院的研究生课程很感兴趣，想报考。
4. Would you be so kind as to provide me with some relevant information?
能否提供一些相关信息？
5. I am writing to ask for admission to your department. It's my long-cherished dream to pursue my study in your honored department.
我想申请到贵系学习，这一直是我的梦想。
6. It would be appreciative if you could send me some relevant information at your earliest convenience.
能否提供一些相关信息？非常感谢。
7. Could you send me an application form as well as some detailed information regarding...
关于详细信息……能否寄一份表格给我？
8. If further materials are required, I am only too willing to forward them to you.
若需要资料，我很乐意发给您。
9. I will certainly feel honored if I could be admitted to your university, which, renowned for its long history and a fine tradition of scholarship, enjoys a worldwide fame.
能被你们这样一所历史久、学风好、名气大的学校录取，我很荣幸。
10. Would you please let me know the procedures for admission at your earliest convenience?
我能否了解一下贵校的录取程序？
11. I am writing to ask whether you could send me some information about your college and for the application forms.
能否给一些学校以及申请表格的信息？
12. I am writing to you in the hope that I may obtain an opportunity to do graduate study in your university.
我希望能到贵校上研究生。
13. Thank you very much for the information you sent me about your college and for the application forms.
谢谢您给我一些学校以及申请表格的信息。
14. I am very interested in the postgraduate program you are currently presiding over.
我对你们的研究生课程很感兴趣。
15. Enclosed in this letter please find three letters of recommendation and a certified copy of my transcript.
随信附有三封推荐信和一份证明信。

询问信常用句型：

1. I am writing to enquire about...
我想询问……
2. I am interested in your...
我对你们的……感兴趣。

3. I would be very grateful if you could send me...
如能邮寄……我将感激不尽。
4. I would like further information about...
我想进一步了解……
5. I am very / most/ extremely/particularly interested in your...
我对……非常感兴趣。
6. I am writing because... /on account of... /at the suggestion of...
写此信是因为……/建议……
7. We wonder if you could help / advise / send us...
您是否能帮助/建议/邮寄……
8. The... has given us your address and has advised us to...
……已告诉我们地址并建议……
9. Your company has been recommended to us by...
贵公司已向我們推荐了……
10. Could you (possibly) / Would you please / Would it be possible for you to send me ...
/ let me know whether... / consider supplying us with...
能否告知有关……, 能否考虑提供……
11. Please quote your best price and state your...
请附上最优价格并声明你们的……
12. I would like you to... / to order... from your company.
我想从贵公司订购……
13. I would be happy/ grateful if you would/could send me...
如能邮寄……我将万分高兴/感激。
14. We would appreciate your sending us...
如能邮寄一些……我们将万分感激。

感谢信常用句型:

1. I am grateful/ obliged to you for...
很感谢……
2. I am greatly indebted to you for what you have done.
我非常感谢你为我所做的一切。
3. I am thankful/ obliged to you for your unselfish assistance during...
很感谢在……期间您无私的帮助。
4. I deeply appreciate your courtesy and we hope to have the opportunity of rewarding your kindness.
我很感谢, 希望有机会专门致谢。
5. I take this opportunity to express my deep appreciation of your kind help you rendered me.
借此机会向您表示谢意。
6. It was kind and generous of you to do this for me, and I appreciate it more than I can say.
我无法表达对您的好意和慷慨的感谢之情。
7. My appreciation to you for your generous help is beyond my words. I wish I could repay

it someday.

非常感谢您的好意和慷慨。我希望有一天能报答您。

8. Please accept my most cordial thanks for your timely help, which I will never forget.

请接受我最诚挚的谢意，我将永记您及时的帮助。

9. Words fail me when I want to express my gratitude to you.

言语无法表达我的感激之情。

10. Again, I would like to express our warm thanks to you.

再次表示感谢。

道歉信常用句型:

1. I must apologize to you for...

很抱歉……

2. I am terribly/ awfully sorry that...

非常抱歉……

3. It is thoughtless/ inconsiderate of me to do...

……是我考虑不周。

4. I am afraid what I have done has caused many inconveniences to you.

抱歉给您带来不便。

5. I sincerely hope that you can understand that I offended you unintentionally.

真心希望您能了解，我无意冒犯您。

6. I regret to inform you that I am unable to do...

抱歉通知你，我不能……

7. I must make a sincere and humble apology to you for...

真心向你道歉。

8. Please accept my sincere apology for... once more.

为……请再次接受我的道歉。

9. I sincerely hope that you will kindly accept my apologies.

真心向你道歉。

10. I am so sorry to have put you to so much trouble.

抱歉给您带来不便。

11. I am writing to apologize for / about...

抱歉……

12. Unfortunately, we have been unable to...

很遗憾我不能……

13. I am sorry for any inconvenience this has caused.

抱歉给您带来不便。

14. I can assure you that we will...

我保证……

推荐信常用句型:

1. I am very glad to recommend to you a former student of mine, Mr. / Miss... to be an ideal candidate for...

我很高兴推荐我以前的学生……先生/女士作为……候选人。

2. It's my great pleasure to have been asked to produce a letter of recommendation for Mr. / Miss...
我很高兴为……先生/女士写推荐信。
3. There is little doubt that, ... is sufficiently qualified for the post he/ she is applying for. I stand up for his/her application without reservation.
毫无疑问他/她能胜任这个职位。我毫不犹豫地推荐他/她。
4. I have no hesitation in recommending ... for admission to your doctoral graduate program.
我毫不犹豫地推荐……报考博士研究生。
5. I hope the information will make you well-informed of...
我希望你能了解……
6. If any further information about him/her is required, please let...
如需他/她的其他信息, 请让……
7. I should be very grateful if you would consider his/her application seriously.
若能认真考虑他/她的申请, 我将万分感激。
8. I would be much obliged to you if you could consider my recommendation and kindly offer him an opportunity.
希望能考虑我的推荐并给他一次机会, 我将万分感激。
9. In view of his/her accomplishments, I am firmly convinced that he/ she will make a successful graduate student.
依照他/她的成绩, 我坚信他/她一定能成为优秀研究生。
10. I have no doubt that... will be a strong candidate for your program.
毫无疑问……很出色。
11. I proudly introduce... to your attention.
我很骄傲地向您推荐……
12. I urge... to apply for your program which is absolutely suitable for future career.
我督促……报考你们的研究生, 因为工作前景非常好。
13. I am certain... will build a bright career with your instruction.
我坚信……在你们的教诲下工作前景非常好。
14. I would safely say... will be excellent with your program.
我保证……将成为你们培养计划中的优秀生。
15. ... is surely the right candidate for your program.
……必定会是你们培养计划的合适人选。

